

# Basic combinatorics in Isabelle/HOL (and the Archive of Formal Proofs)

January 18, 2026

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Transposition function</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Stirling numbers of first and second kind</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	Stirling numbers of the second kind . . . . .	5
2.2	Stirling numbers of the first kind . . . . .	6
2.2.1	Efficient code . . . . .	9
<b>3</b>	<b>Permutations, both general and specifically on finite sets.</b>	<b>11</b>
3.1	Auxiliary . . . . .	12
3.2	Basic definition and consequences . . . . .	12
3.3	Group properties . . . . .	17
3.4	Restricting a permutation to a subset . . . . .	18
3.5	Mapping a permutation . . . . .	19
3.6	The number of permutations on a finite set . . . . .	25
3.7	Permutations of index set for iterated operations . . . . .	28
3.8	Permutations as transposition sequences . . . . .	28
3.9	Some closure properties of the set of permutations, with lengths	28
3.10	Various combinations of transpositions with 2, 1 and 0 com- mon elements . . . . .	30
3.11	The identity map only has even transposition sequences . . .	30
3.12	Therefore we have a welldefined notion of parity . . . . .	32
3.13	And it has the expected composition properties . . . . .	33
3.14	A more abstract characterization of permutations . . . . .	33
3.15	Relation to <i>permutes</i> . . . . .	35
3.16	Sign of a permutation . . . . .	36
3.17	An induction principle in terms of transpositions . . . . .	36
3.18	More on the sign of permutations . . . . .	40
3.19	Transpositions of adjacent elements . . . . .	41
3.20	Transferring properties of permutations along bijections . . .	43

3.21	Permuting a list . . . . .	45
3.22	More lemmas about permutations . . . . .	47
3.23	Sum over a set of permutations (could generalize to iteration)	56
3.24	Constructing permutations from association lists . . . . .	57
<b>4</b>	<b>Permuted Lists</b>	<b>60</b>
4.1	An existing notion . . . . .	60
4.2	Nontrivial conclusions . . . . .	60
4.3	Trivial conclusions: . . . . .	61
<b>5</b>	<b>Permutations of a Multiset</b>	<b>63</b>
5.1	Permutations of a multiset . . . . .	64
5.2	Cardinality of permutations . . . . .	66
5.3	Permutations of a set . . . . .	69
5.4	Code generation . . . . .	70
<b>6</b>	<b>Cycles</b>	<b>74</b>
6.1	Definitions . . . . .	74
6.2	Basic Properties . . . . .	74
6.3	Conjugation of cycles . . . . .	76
6.4	When Cycles Commute . . . . .	77
6.5	Cycles from Permutations . . . . .	77
6.5.1	Exponentiation of permutations . . . . .	77
6.5.2	Extraction of cycles from permutations . . . . .	79
6.6	Decomposition on Cycles . . . . .	80
6.6.1	Preliminaries . . . . .	81
6.6.2	Decomposition . . . . .	84
<b>7</b>	<b>Permutations as abstract type</b>	<b>86</b>
7.1	Abstract type of permutations . . . . .	86
7.2	Identity, composition and inversion . . . . .	88
7.3	Orbit and order of elements . . . . .	91
7.4	Swaps . . . . .	101
7.5	Permutations specified by cycles . . . . .	102
7.6	Syntax . . . . .	102
<b>8</b>	<b>Permutation orbits</b>	<b>102</b>
8.1	Orbits and cyclic permutations . . . . .	102
8.2	Decomposition of arbitrary permutations . . . . .	108
8.3	Function-power distance between values . . . . .	111
<b>9</b>	<b>Basic combinatorics in Isabelle/HOL (and the Archive of Formal Proofs)</b>	<b>115</b>

# 1 Transposition function

```
theory Transposition
  imports Main
begin
```

```
definition transpose :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a
  where  $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ c = (\text{if } c = a \text{ then } b \text{ else if } c = b \text{ then } a \text{ else } c) \rangle$ 
```

```
lemma transpose_apply_first [simp]:
   $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ a = b \rangle$ 
  by (simp add: transpose_def)
```

```
lemma transpose_apply_second [simp]:
   $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ b = a \rangle$ 
  by (simp add: transpose_def)
```

```
lemma transpose_apply_other [simp]:
   $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ c = c \rangle$  if  $\langle c \neq a \rangle \langle c \neq b \rangle$ 
  using that by (simp add: transpose_def)
```

```
lemma transpose_same [simp]:
   $\langle \text{transpose } a \ a = \text{id} \rangle$ 
  by (simp add: fun_eq_iff transpose_def)
```

```
lemma transpose_eq_iff:
   $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ c = d \iff (c \neq a \wedge c \neq b \wedge d = c) \vee (c = a \wedge d = b) \vee (c = b \wedge d = a) \rangle$ 
  by (auto simp add: transpose_def)
```

```
lemma transpose_eq_imp_eq:
   $\langle c = d \rangle$  if  $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ c = \text{transpose } a \ b \ d \rangle$ 
  using that by (auto simp add: transpose_eq_iff)
```

```
lemma transpose_commute [ac_simps]:
   $\langle \text{transpose } b \ a = \text{transpose } a \ b \rangle$ 
  by (auto simp add: fun_eq_iff transpose_eq_iff)
```

```
lemma transpose_involutory [simp]:
   $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ (\text{transpose } a \ b \ c) = c \rangle$ 
  by (auto simp add: transpose_eq_iff)
```

```
lemma transpose_comp_involutory [simp]:
   $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \circ \text{transpose } a \ b = \text{id} \rangle$ 
  by (rule ext) simp
```

```
lemma transpose_eq_id_iff:  $\text{Transposition.transpose } x \ y = \text{id} \iff x = y$ 
  by (auto simp: fun_eq_iff Transposition.transpose_def)
```

**lemma** *transpose\_triple*:  
 $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ (\text{transpose } b \ c \ (\text{transpose } a \ b \ d)) = \text{transpose } a \ c \ d \rangle$   
**if**  $\langle a \neq c \rangle$  **and**  $\langle b \neq c \rangle$   
**using that** **by** (*simp add: transpose\_def*)

**lemma** *transpose\_comp\_triple*:  
 $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \circ \text{transpose } b \ c \circ \text{transpose } a \ b = \text{transpose } a \ c \rangle$   
**if**  $\langle a \neq c \rangle$  **and**  $\langle b \neq c \rangle$   
**using that** **by** (*simp add: fun\_eq\_iff transpose\_triple*)

**lemma** *transpose\_image\_eq* [*simp*]:  
 $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ ' A = A \rangle$  **if**  $\langle a \in A \longleftrightarrow b \in A \rangle$   
**using that** **by** (*auto simp add: transpose\_def [abs\_def]*)

**lemma** *inj\_on\_transpose* [*simp*]:  
 $\langle \text{inj\_on } (\text{transpose } a \ b) \ A \rangle$   
**by rule** (*drule transpose\_eq\_imp\_eq*)

**lemma** *inj\_transpose*:  
 $\langle \text{inj } (\text{transpose } a \ b) \rangle$   
**by** (*fact inj\_on\_transpose*)

**lemma** *surj\_transpose*:  
 $\langle \text{surj } (\text{transpose } a \ b) \rangle$   
**by simp**

**lemma** *bij\_betw\_transpose\_iff* [*simp*]:  
 $\langle \text{bij\_betw } (\text{transpose } a \ b) \ A \ A \rangle$  **if**  $\langle a \in A \longleftrightarrow b \in A \rangle$   
**using that** **by** (*auto simp: bij\_betw\_def*)

**lemma** *bij\_transpose* [*simp*]:  
 $\langle \text{bij } (\text{transpose } a \ b) \rangle$   
**by** (*rule bij\_betw\_transpose\_iff simp*)

**lemma** *bijection\_transpose*:  
 $\langle \text{bijection } (\text{transpose } a \ b) \rangle$   
**by standard** (*fact bij\_transpose*)

**lemma** *inv\_transpose\_eq* [*simp*]:  
 $\langle \text{inv } (\text{transpose } a \ b) = \text{transpose } a \ b \rangle$   
**by** (*rule inv\_unique\_comp simp\_all*)

**lemma** *transpose\_apply\_commute*:  
 $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \ (f \ c) = f \ (\text{transpose } (\text{inv } f \ a) \ (\text{inv } f \ b) \ c) \rangle$   
**if**  $\langle \text{bij } f \rangle$   
**proof** –  
**from that have**  $\langle \text{surj } f \rangle$   
**by** (*rule bij\_is\_surj*)  
**with that show** *?thesis*

by (simp add: transpose\_def bij\_inv\_eq\_iff surj\_f\_inv\_f)  
qed

**lemma** transpose\_comp\_eq:  
 $\langle \text{transpose } a \ b \circ f = f \circ \text{transpose } (\text{inv } f \ a) \ (\text{inv } f \ b) \rangle$   
 if  $\langle \text{bij } f \rangle$   
 using that by (simp add: fun\_eq\_iff transpose\_apply\_commute)

**lemma** in\_transpose\_image\_iff:  
 $\langle x \in \text{transpose } a \ b \ 'S \longleftrightarrow \text{transpose } a \ b \ x \in S \rangle$   
 by (auto intro!: image\_eqI)

Legacy input alias

**setup**  $\langle \text{Context.theory\_map } (\text{Name\_Space.map\_naming } (\text{Name\_Space.qualified\_path } \text{true } \textbf{binding} \ \langle \text{Fun} \rangle)) \rangle$

**abbreviation** (input) swap ::  $\langle 'a \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b \rangle$   
 where  $\langle \text{swap } a \ b \ f \equiv f \circ \text{transpose } a \ b \rangle$

**lemma** swap\_def:  
 $\langle \text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f = f \ (a := f \ b, \ b := f \ a) \rangle$   
 by (simp add: fun\_eq\_iff)

**setup**  $\langle \text{Context.theory\_map } (\text{Name\_Space.map\_naming } (\text{Name\_Space.parent\_path})) \rangle$

**lemma** swap\_apply:  
 $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f \ a = f \ b$   
 $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f \ b = f \ a$   
 $c \neq a \implies c \neq b \implies \text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f \ c = f \ c$   
 by simp\_all

**lemma** swap\_self:  $\text{Fun.swap } a \ a \ f = f$   
 by simp

**lemma** swap\_commute:  $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f = \text{Fun.swap } b \ a \ f$   
 by (simp add: ac\_simps)

**lemma** swap\_nilpotent:  $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ (\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f) = f$   
 by (simp add: comp\_assoc)

**lemma** swap\_comp\_involutory:  $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \circ \text{Fun.swap } a \ b = \text{id}$   
 by (simp add: fun\_eq\_iff)

**lemma** swap\_triple:  
 assumes  $a \neq c$  and  $b \neq c$   
 shows  $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ (\text{Fun.swap } b \ c \ (\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f)) = \text{Fun.swap } a \ c \ f$   
 using assms transpose\_comp\_triple [of  $a \ c \ b$ ]  
 by (simp add: comp\_assoc)

**lemma** *comp\_swap*:  $f \circ \text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ g = \text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ (f \circ g)$   
**by** (*simp add: comp\_assoc*)

**lemma** *swap\_image\_eq*:  
**assumes**  $a \in A \ b \in A$   
**shows**  $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f \text{ ` } A = f \text{ ` } A$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*metis image\_comp transpose\_image\_eq*)

**lemma** *inj\_on\_imp\_inj\_on\_swap*:  $\text{inj\_on } f \ A \implies a \in A \implies b \in A \implies \text{inj\_on } (\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f) \ A$   
**by** (*simp add: comp\_inj\_on*)

**lemma** *inj\_on\_swap\_iff*:  
**assumes**  $A: a \in A \ b \in A$   
**shows**  $\text{inj\_on } (\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f) \ A \longleftrightarrow \text{inj\_on } f \ A$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*metis inj\_on\_imageI inj\_on\_imp\_inj\_on\_swap transpose\_image\_eq*)

**lemma** *surj\_imp\_surj\_swap*:  $\text{surj } f \implies \text{surj } (\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f)$   
**by** (*meson comp\_surj surj\_transpose*)

**lemma** *surj\_swap\_iff*:  $\text{surj } (\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f) \longleftrightarrow \text{surj } f$   
**by** (*metis fun.set\_map surj\_transpose*)

**lemma** *bij\_betw\_swap\_iff*:  $x \in A \implies y \in A \implies \text{bij\_betw } (\text{Fun.swap } x \ y \ f) \ A \ B \longleftrightarrow \text{bij\_betw } f \ A \ B$   
**by** (*meson bij\_betw\_comp\_iff bij\_betw\_transpose\_iff*)

**lemma** *bij\_swap\_iff*:  $\text{bij } (\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ f) \longleftrightarrow \text{bij } f$   
**by** (*simp add: bij\_betw\_swap\_iff*)

**lemma** *swap\_image*:  
 $\langle \text{Fun.swap } i \ j \ f \text{ ` } A = f \text{ ` } (A - \{i, j\} \cup (\text{if } i \in A \text{ then } \{j\} \text{ else } \{\}) \cup (\text{if } j \in A \text{ then } \{i\} \text{ else } \{\})) \rangle$   
**by** (*auto simp add: Fun.swap\_def*)

**lemma** *inv\_swap\_id*:  $\text{inv } (\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ \text{id}) = \text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ \text{id}$   
**by** *simp*

**lemma** *bij\_swap\_comp*:  
**assumes**  $\text{bij } p$   
**shows**  $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ \text{id} \circ p = \text{Fun.swap } (\text{inv } p \ a) \ (\text{inv } p \ b) \ p$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*simp add: transpose\_comp\_eq*)

**lemma** *swap\_id\_eq*:  $\text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ \text{id } x = (\text{if } x = a \text{ then } b \text{ else if } x = b \text{ then } a \text{ else } x)$   
**by** (*simp add: Fun.swap\_def*)

**lemma** *swap\_unfold*:  
 $\langle \text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ p = p \circ \text{Fun.swap } a \ b \ \text{id} \rangle$

```

    by simp

lemma swap_id_idempotent: Fun.swap a b id ∘ Fun.swap a b id = id
  by simp

lemma bij_swap_compose_bij:
  ⟨bij (Fun.swap a b id ∘ p)⟩ if ⟨bij p⟩
  using that by (rule bij_comp) simp

end

```

## 2 Stirling numbers of first and second kind

```

theory Stirling
imports Main
begin

```

### 2.1 Stirling numbers of the second kind

```

fun Stirling :: nat ⇒ nat ⇒ nat
  where
    Stirling 0 0 = 1
  | Stirling 0 (Suc k) = 0
  | Stirling (Suc n) 0 = 0
  | Stirling (Suc n) (Suc k) = Suc k * Stirling n (Suc k) + Stirling n k

lemma Stirling_1 [simp]: Stirling (Suc n) (Suc 0) = 1
  by (induct n) simp_all

lemma Stirling_less [simp]: n < k ⟹ Stirling n k = 0
  by (induct n k rule: Stirling.induct) simp_all

lemma Stirling_same [simp]: Stirling n n = 1
  by (induct n) simp_all

lemma Stirling_2_2: Stirling (Suc (Suc n)) (Suc (Suc 0)) = 2 ^ Suc n - 1
proof (induct n)
  case 0
  then show ?case by simp
next
  case (Suc n)
  have Stirling (Suc (Suc (Suc n))) (Suc (Suc 0)) =
    2 * Stirling (Suc (Suc n)) (Suc (Suc 0)) + Stirling (Suc (Suc n)) (Suc 0)
  by simp
  also have ... = 2 * (2 ^ Suc n - 1) + 1
  by (simp only: Suc Stirling_1)
  also have ... = 2 ^ Suc (Suc n) - 1
  proof -
    have (2::nat) ^ Suc n - 1 > 0

```

```

    by (induct n) simp_all
  then have  $2 * ((2::nat) ^ Suc n - 1) > 0$ 
    by simp
  then have  $2 \leq 2 * ((2::nat) ^ Suc n)$ 
    by simp
  with add_diff_assoc2 [of 2 2 * 2 ^ Suc n 1]
  have  $2 * 2 ^ Suc n - 2 + (1::nat) = 2 * 2 ^ Suc n + 1 - 2$  .
  then show ?thesis
    by (simp add: nat_distrib)
qed
finally show ?case by simp
qed

```

```

lemma Stirling_2:  $Stirling (Suc n) (Suc (Suc 0)) = 2 ^ n - 1$ 
  using Stirling_2_2 by (cases n) simp_all

```

## 2.2 Stirling numbers of the first kind

```

fun stirling :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat
  where
    stirling 0 0 = 1
  | stirling 0 (Suc k) = 0
  | stirling (Suc n) 0 = 0
  | stirling (Suc n) (Suc k) = n * stirling n (Suc k) + stirling n k

```

```

lemma stirling_0 [simp]:  $n > 0 \implies stirling\ n\ 0 = 0$ 
  by (cases n) simp_all

```

```

lemma stirling_less [simp]:  $n < k \implies stirling\ n\ k = 0$ 
  by (induct n k rule: stirling.induct) simp_all

```

```

lemma stirling_same [simp]:  $stirling\ n\ n = 1$ 
  by (induct n) simp_all

```

```

lemma stirling_Suc_n_1:  $stirling\ (Suc\ n)\ (Suc\ 0) = fact\ n$ 
  by (induct n) auto

```

```

lemma stirling_Suc_n_n:  $stirling\ (Suc\ n)\ n = Suc\ n\ choose\ 2$ 
  by (induct n) (auto simp add: numerals(2))

```

```

lemma stirling_Suc_n_2:
  assumes  $n \geq Suc\ 0$ 
  shows  $stirling\ (Suc\ n)\ 2 = (\sum k=1..n. fact\ n\ div\ k)$ 
  using assms
proof (induct n)
  case 0
  then show ?case by simp
next
  case (Suc n)

```



```

show ?case
proof (cases n)
  case 0
  then show ?thesis
    by (simp add: numerals(2))
next
  case Suc
  then have geq1: Suc 0 ≤ n
    by simp
  have stirring (Suc (Suc n)) 2 = Suc n * stirring (Suc n) 2 + stirring (Suc n)
(Suc 0)
    by (simp only: stirring.simps(4)[of Suc n] numerals(2))
  also have ... = Suc n * (∑ k=1..n. fact n div k) + fact n
    using Suc.hyps[OF geq1]
    by (simp only: stirring_Suc_n_1 of_nat_fact of_nat_add of_nat_mult)
  also have ... = Suc n * (∑ k=1..n. fact n div k) + Suc n * fact n div Suc n
    by (metis nat.distinct(1) nonzero_mult_div_cancel_left)
  also have ... = (∑ k=1..n. fact (Suc n) div k) + fact (Suc n) div Suc n
    by (simp add: sum_distrib_left div_mult_swap dvd_fact)
  also have ... = (∑ k=1..Suc n. fact (Suc n) div k)
    by simp
  finally show ?thesis .
qed
qed

lemma of_nat_stirling_Suc_n_2:
  assumes n ≥ Suc 0
  shows (of_nat (stirling (Suc n) 2))::'a::field_char_0 = fact n * (∑ k=1..n. (1
/ of_nat k))
  using assms
proof (induct n)
  case 0
  then show ?case by simp
next
  case (Suc n)
  show ?case
  proof (cases n)
    case 0
    then show ?thesis
      by (auto simp add: numerals(2))
  next
    case Suc
    then have geq1: Suc 0 ≤ n
      by simp
    have (of_nat (stirling (Suc (Suc n)) 2))::'a =
      of_nat (Suc n * stirring (Suc n) 2 + stirring (Suc n) (Suc 0))
      by (simp only: stirring.simps(4)[of Suc n] numerals(2))
    also have ... = of_nat (Suc n) * (fact n * (∑ k = 1..n. 1 / of_nat k)) + fact
n

```

```

    using Suc.hyps[OF geq1]
    by (simp only: stirling_Suc_n_1 of_nat_fact of_nat_add of_nat_mult)
    also have ... = fact (Suc n) * ( $\sum k = 1..n. 1 / \text{of\_nat } k$ ) + fact (Suc n) *
    (1 / of_nat (Suc n))
    using of_nat_neq_0 by auto
    also have ... = fact (Suc n) * ( $\sum k = 1..Suc\ n. 1 / \text{of\_nat } k$ )
    by (simp add: distrib_left)
    finally show ?thesis .
qed
qed

```

```

lemma sum_stirling: ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } n\ k$ ) = fact n
proof (induct n)
  case 0
  then show ?case by simp
next
  case (Suc n)
  have ( $\sum k \leq Suc\ n. \text{stirling } (Suc\ n)\ k$ ) = stirling (Suc n) 0 + ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } (Suc\ n)\ (Suc\ k)$ )
  by (simp only: sum.atMost_Suc_shift)
  also have ... = ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } (Suc\ n)\ (Suc\ k)$ )
  by simp
  also have ... = ( $\sum k \leq n. n * \text{stirling } n\ (Suc\ k) + \text{stirling } n\ k$ )
  by simp
  also have ... = n * ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } n\ (Suc\ k)$ ) + ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } n\ k$ )
  by (simp add: sum.distrib sum_distrib_left)
  also have ... = n * fact n + fact n
  proof -
    have n * ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } n\ (Suc\ k)$ ) = n * (( $\sum k \leq Suc\ n. \text{stirling } n\ k$ ) - stirling n 0)
    by (metis add_diff_cancel_left' sum.atMost_Suc_shift)
    also have ... = n * ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } n\ k$ )
    by (cases n) simp_all
    also have ... = n * fact n
    using Suc.hyps by simp
    finally have n * ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } n\ (Suc\ k)$ ) = n * fact n .
    moreover have ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{stirling } n\ k$ ) = fact n
    using Suc.hyps .
    ultimately show ?thesis by simp
  qed
  also have ... = fact (Suc n) by simp
  finally show ?case .
qed

```

```

lemma stirling_pochhammer:
  ( $\sum k \leq n. \text{of\_nat } (\text{stirling } n\ k) * x^k$ ) = (pochhammer x n :: 'a::comm_semiring_1)
proof (induct n)
  case 0
  then show ?case by simp

```

```

next
case (Suc n)
have of_nat (n * stirling n 0) = (0 :: 'a) by (cases n) simp_all
then have (∑ k ≤ Suc n. of_nat (stirling (Suc n) k) * x ^ k) =
  (of_nat (n * stirling n 0) * x ^ 0 +
   (∑ i ≤ n. of_nat (n * stirling n (Suc i)) * (x ^ Suc i))) +
  (∑ i ≤ n. of_nat (stirling n i) * (x ^ Suc i))
  by (subst sum.atMost_Suc_shift) (simp add: sum.distrib ring_distrib)
also have ... = pochhammer x (Suc n)
  by (subst sum.atMost_Suc_shift [symmetric])
  (simp add: algebra_simps sum.distrib sum_distrib_left pochhammer_Suc flip:
   Suc)
finally show ?case .
qed

```

A row of the Stirling number triangle

```

definition stirling_row :: nat ⇒ nat list
  where stirling_row n = [stirling n k. k ← [0..<Suc n]]

lemma nth_stirling_row: k ≤ n ⇒ stirling_row n ! k = stirling n k
  by (simp add: stirling_row_def del: upt_Suc)

lemma length_stirling_row [simp]: length (stirling_row n) = Suc n
  by (simp add: stirling_row_def)

lemma stirling_row_nonempty [simp]: stirling_row n ≠ []
  using length_stirling_row[of n] by (auto simp del: length_stirling_row)

```

### 2.2.1 Efficient code

Naively using the defining equations of the Stirling numbers of the first kind to compute them leads to exponential run time due to repeated computations. We can use memoisation to compute them row by row without repeating computations, at the cost of computing a few unneeded values.

As a bonus, this is very efficient for applications where an entire row of Stirling numbers is needed.

```

definition zip_with_prev :: ('a ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'b) ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'a list ⇒ 'b list
  where zip_with_prev f x xs = map2 f (x # xs) xs

lemma zip_with_prev_altdef:
  zip_with_prev f x xs =
    (if xs = [] then [] else f x (hd xs) # [f (xs!i) (xs!(i+1)). i ← [0..<length xs - 1]])
proof (cases xs)
  case Nil
  then show ?thesis
    by (simp add: zip_with_prev_def)
next

```

```

case (Cons y ys)
then have zip_with_prev f x xs = f x (hd xs) # zip_with_prev f y ys
  by (simp add: zip_with_prev_def)
also have zip_with_prev f y ys = map ( $\lambda i. f (xs ! i) (xs ! (i + 1))$ ) [0..length
xs - 1]
  unfolding Cons
  by (induct ys arbitrary: y)
    (simp_all add: zip_with_prev_def upt_conv_Cons flip: map_Suc_upt del:
upt_Suc)
  finally show ?thesis
    using Cons by simp
qed

```

```

primrec stirling_row_aux
  where
    stirling_row_aux n y [] = [1]
    | stirling_row_aux n y (x#xs) = (y + n * x) # stirling_row_aux n x xs

```

```

lemma stirling_row_aux_correct:
  stirling_row_aux n y xs = zip_with_prev ( $\lambda a b. a + n * b$ ) y xs @ [1]
  by (induct xs arbitrary: y) (simp_all add: zip_with_prev_def)

```

```

lemma stirling_row_code [code]:
  stirling_row 0 = [1]
  stirling_row (Suc n) = stirling_row_aux n 0 (stirling_row n)
proof goal_cases
  case 1
  show ?case by (simp add: stirling_row_def)
next
  case 2
  have stirling_row (Suc n) =
    0 # [stirling_row n ! i + stirling_row n ! (i+1) * n. i ← [0..n]] @ [1]
  proof (rule nth_equalityI, goal_cases length nth)
    case (nth i)
    from nth have i ≤ Suc n
    by simp
    then consider i = 0 ∨ i = Suc n | i > 0 i ≤ n
    by linarith
    then show ?case
    proof cases
      case 1
      then show ?thesis
        by (auto simp: nth_stirling_row_nth_append)
    next
      case 2
      then show ?thesis
        by (cases i) (simp_all add: nth_append_nth_stirling_row)
    qed

```

```

next
  case length
  then show ?case by simp
qed
also have 0 # [stirling_row n ! i + stirling_row n ! (i+1) * n. i ← [0.. $n$ ]] @
[1] =
  zip_with_prev (λa b. a + n * b) 0 (stirling_row n) @ [1]
  by (cases n) (auto simp add: zip_with_prev_altdef stirling_row_def hd_map
simp del: upt_Suc)
  also have ... = stirling_row_aux n 0 (stirling_row n)
  by (simp add: stirling_row_aux_correct)
  finally show ?case .
qed

lemma stirling_code [code]:
  stirling n k =
    (if k = 0 then (if n = 0 then 1 else 0)
     else if k > n then 0
     else if k = n then 1
     else stirling_row n ! k)
  by (simp add: nth_stirling_row)

end

```

### 3 Permutations, both general and specifically on finite sets.

```

theory Permutations
imports
  HOL-Library.Multiset
  HOL-Library.Disjoint_Sets
  Transposition
begin

```

#### 3.1 Auxiliary

```

abbreviation (input) fixpoints :: ⟨('a ⇒ 'a) ⇒ 'a set⟩
  where ⟨fixpoints f ≡ {x. f x = x}⟩

```

```

lemma inj_on_fixpoints:
  ⟨inj_on f (fixpoints f)⟩
  by (rule inj_onI) simp

```

```

lemma bij_betw_fixpoints:
  ⟨bij_betw f (fixpoints f) (fixpoints f)⟩
  using inj_on_fixpoints by (auto simp add: bij_betw_def)

```

### 3.2 Basic definition and consequences

**definition** *permutes* ::  $\langle 'a \Rightarrow 'a \rangle \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set} \Rightarrow \text{bool} \rangle$  (**infixr** *permutes* 41)  
**where**  $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \longleftrightarrow (\forall x. x \notin S \longrightarrow p \ x = x) \wedge (\forall y. \exists! x. p \ x = y) \rangle$

**lemma** *bij\_imp\_permutes*:

$\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  **if**  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p \ S \ S \rangle$  **and** *stable*:  $\langle \bigwedge x. x \notin S \Longrightarrow p \ x = x \rangle$

**proof** –

**note**  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p \ S \ S \rangle$

**moreover have**  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p \ (- \ S) \ (- \ S) \rangle$

**by** (*auto simp add: stable intro!: bij\_betw\_imageI inj\_onI*)

**ultimately have**  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p \ (S \cup - \ S) \ (S \cup - \ S) \rangle$

**by** (*rule bij\_betw\_combine*) *simp*

**then have**  $\langle \exists! x. p \ x = y \rangle$  **for** *y*

**by** (*simp add: bij\_iff*)

**with** *stable* **show** *?thesis*

**by** (*simp add: permutes\_def*)

**qed**

**lemma** *inj\_imp\_permutes*:

**assumes** *i*: *inj\_on* *f* *S* **and** *fin*: *finite* *S*

**and** *fS*:  $\bigwedge x. x \in S \Longrightarrow f \ x \in S$

**and** *f*:  $\bigwedge i. i \notin S \Longrightarrow f \ i = i$

**shows** *f permutes S*

**unfolding** *permutes\_def*

**proof** (*intro conjI allI impI, rule f*)

**fix** *y*

**from** *endo\_inj\_surj*[*OF fin \_ i*] *fS* **have** *fs*:  $f \ ` \ S = S$  **by** *auto*

**show**  $\exists! x. f \ x = y$

**proof** (*cases y ∈ S*)

**case** *False*

**thus** *?thesis* **by** (*intro ex1I[of \_ y], insert fS f*) *force*+

**next**

**case** *True*

**with** *fs* **obtain** *x* **where**  $x \in S$  **and** *fx*:  $f \ x = y$  **by** *force*

**show** *?thesis*

**proof** (*rule ex1I, rule fx*)

**fix** *x'*

**assume** *fx'*:  $f \ x' = y$

**with** *True f[of x']* **have**  $x' \in S$  **by** *metis*

**from** *inj\_onD*[*OF i fx[folded fx'] x this*]

**show**  $x' = x$  **by** *simp*

**qed**

**qed**

**qed**

**context**

**fixes** *p* ::  $\langle 'a \Rightarrow 'a \rangle$  **and** *S* ::  $\langle 'a \text{ set} \rangle$

**assumes** *perm*:  $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$

**begin**

```

lemma permutes_inj:
   $\langle \text{inj } p \rangle$ 
  using perm by (auto simp: permutes_def inj_on_def)

lemma permutes_image:
   $\langle p \text{ ' } S = S \rangle$ 
proof (rule set_eqI)
  fix  $x$ 
  show  $\langle x \in p \text{ ' } S \longleftrightarrow x \in S \rangle$ 
proof
  assume  $\langle x \in p \text{ ' } S \rangle$ 
  then obtain  $y$  where  $\langle y \in S \rangle \langle p \ y = x \rangle$ 
  by blast
  with perm show  $\langle x \in S \rangle$ 
  by (cases  $\langle y = x \rangle$ ) (auto simp add: permutes_def)
next
  assume  $\langle x \in S \rangle$ 
  with perm obtain  $y$  where  $\langle y \in S \rangle \langle p \ y = x \rangle$ 
  by (metis permutes_def)
  then show  $\langle x \in p \text{ ' } S \rangle$ 
  by blast
qed
qed

lemma permutes_not_in:
   $\langle x \notin S \implies p \ x = x \rangle$ 
  using perm by (auto simp: permutes_def)

lemma permutes_image_complement:
   $\langle p \text{ ' } (- S) = - S \rangle$ 
  by (auto simp add: permutes_not_in)

lemma permutes_in_image:
   $\langle p \ x \in S \longleftrightarrow x \in S \rangle$ 
  using permutes_image permutes_inj by (auto dest: inj_image_mem_iff)

lemma permutes_surj:
   $\langle \text{surj } p \rangle$ 
proof -
  have  $\langle p \text{ ' } (S \cup - S) = p \text{ ' } S \cup p \text{ ' } (- S) \rangle$ 
  by (rule image_Un)
  then show ?thesis
  by (simp add: permutes_image permutes_image_complement)
qed

lemma permutes_inv_o:
  shows  $p \circ \text{inv } p = \text{id}$ 
  and  $\text{inv } p \circ p = \text{id}$ 

```

```

using permutes_inj permutes_surj
unfolding inj_iff [symmetric] surj_iff [symmetric] by auto

lemma permutes_inverses:
  shows  $p (inv\ p\ x) = x$ 
    and  $inv\ p (p\ x) = x$ 
  using permutes_inv_o [unfolded fun_eq_iff o_def] by auto

lemma permutes_inv_eq:
   $\langle inv\ p\ y = x \longleftrightarrow p\ x = y \rangle$ 
  by (auto simp add: permutes_inverses)

lemma permutes_inj_on:
   $\langle inj\_on\ p\ A \rangle$ 
  by (rule inj_on_subset [of _ UNIV]) (auto intro: permutes_inj)

lemma permutes_bij:
   $\langle bij\ p \rangle$ 
  unfolding bij_def by (metis permutes_inj permutes_surj)

lemma permutes_imp_bij:
   $\langle bij\_betw\ p\ S\ S \rangle$ 
  by (simp add: bij_betw_def permutes_image permutes_inj_on)

lemma permutes_subset:
   $\langle p\ permutes\ T \rangle$  if  $\langle S \subseteq T \rangle$ 
proof (rule bij_imp_permutes)
  define  $R$  where  $\langle R = T - S \rangle$ 
  with that have  $\langle T = R \cup S \rangle$   $\langle R \cap S = \{\} \rangle$ 
  by auto
  then have  $\langle p\ x = x \rangle$  if  $\langle x \in R \rangle$  for  $x$ 
    using that by (auto intro: permutes_not_in)
  then have  $\langle p\ 'R = R \rangle$ 
    by simp
  with  $\langle T = R \cup S \rangle$  show  $\langle bij\_betw\ p\ T\ T \rangle$ 
    by (simp add: bij_betw_def permutes_inj_on image_Un permutes_image)
fix  $x$ 
assume  $\langle x \notin T \rangle$ 
with  $\langle T = R \cup S \rangle$  show  $\langle p\ x = x \rangle$ 
  by (simp add: permutes_not_in)
qed

lemma permutes_imp_permutes_insert:
   $\langle p\ permutes\ insert\ x\ S \rangle$ 
  by (rule permutes_subset) auto

end

lemma permutes_id [simp]:

```



```

    ⟨id permutes S⟩
  by (auto intro: bij_imp_permutes)

lemma permutes_empty [simp]:
  ⟨p permutes {} ⟷ p = id⟩
proof
  assume ⟨p permutes {}⟩
  then show ⟨p = id⟩
    by (auto simp add: fun_eq_iff permutes_not_in)
next
  assume ⟨p = id⟩
  then show ⟨p permutes {}⟩
    by simp
qed

lemma permutes_sing [simp]:
  ⟨p permutes {a} ⟷ p = id⟩
proof
  assume perm: ⟨p permutes {a}⟩
  show ⟨p = id⟩
  proof
    fix x
    from perm have ⟨p ‘ {a} = {a} ⟩
      by (rule permutes_image)
    with perm show ⟨p x = id x⟩
      by (cases ⟨x = a⟩) (auto simp add: permutes_not_in)
  qed
next
  assume ⟨p = id⟩
  then show ⟨p permutes {a}⟩
    by simp
qed

lemma permutes_univ: p permutes UNIV ⟷ (∀ y. ∃! x. p x = y)
  by (simp add: permutes_def)

lemma permutes_swap_id: a ∈ S ⟹ b ∈ S ⟹ transpose a b permutes S
  by (rule bij_imp_permutes) (auto intro: transpose_apply_other)

lemma permutes_altdef: p permutes A ⟷ bij_betw p A A ∧ {x. p x ≠ x} ⊆ A
  using permutes_not_in[of p A]
  by (auto simp: permutes_imp_bij intro!: bij_imp_permutes)

lemma permutes_superset:
  ⟨p permutes T⟩ if ⟨p permutes S⟩ ⟨∧ x. x ∈ S - T ⟹ p x = x⟩
proof -
  define R U where ⟨R = T ∩ S⟩ and ⟨U = S - T⟩
  then have ⟨T = R ∪ (T - S)⟩ ⟨S = R ∪ U⟩ ⟨R ∩ U = {}⟩
    by auto

```

```

from that  $\langle U = S - T \rangle$  have  $\langle p \text{ ' } U = U \rangle$ 
  by simp
from  $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  have  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p (R \cup U) (R \cup U) \rangle$ 
  by (simp add: permutes_imp_bij  $\langle S = R \cup U \rangle$ )
moreover have  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p U U \rangle$ 
  using that  $\langle U = S - T \rangle$  by (simp add: bij_betw_def permutes_inj_on)
ultimately have  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p R R \rangle$ 
  using  $\langle R \cap U = \{\} \rangle$   $\langle R \cap U = \{\} \rangle$  by (rule bij_betw_partition)
then have  $\langle p \text{ permutes } R \rangle$ 
proof (rule bij_imp_permutes)
  fix  $x$ 
  assume  $\langle x \notin R \rangle$ 
  with  $\langle R = T \cap S \rangle$   $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  show  $\langle p x = x \rangle$ 
    by (cases  $\langle x \in S \rangle$ ) (auto simp add: permutes_not_in that(2))
qed
then have  $\langle p \text{ permutes } R \cup (T - S) \rangle$ 
  by (rule permutes_subset) simp
with  $\langle T = R \cup (T - S) \rangle$  show ?thesis
  by simp
qed

lemma permutes_bij_inv_into:
  fixes  $A :: 'a \text{ set}$ 
    and  $B :: 'b \text{ set}$ 
  assumes  $p \text{ permutes } A$ 
    and  $\text{bij\_betw } f A B$ 
  shows  $(\lambda x. \text{if } x \in B \text{ then } f (p (\text{inv\_into } A f x)) \text{ else } x) \text{ permutes } B$ 
proof (rule bij_imp_permutes)
  from assms have  $\text{bij\_betw } p A A$   $\text{bij\_betw } f A B$   $\text{bij\_betw } (\text{inv\_into } A f) B A$ 
  by (auto simp add: permutes_imp_bij bij_betw_inv_into)
  then have  $\text{bij\_betw } (f \circ p \circ \text{inv\_into } A f) B B$ 
  by (simp add: bij_betw_trans)
  then show  $\text{bij\_betw } (\lambda x. \text{if } x \in B \text{ then } f (p (\text{inv\_into } A f x)) \text{ else } x) B B$ 
  by (subst bij_betw_cong[where g=f \circ p \circ inv\_into A f]) auto
next
  fix  $x$ 
  assume  $x \notin B$ 
  then show  $(\text{if } x \in B \text{ then } f (p (\text{inv\_into } A f x)) \text{ else } x) = x$  by auto
qed

lemma permutes_image_mset:
  assumes  $p \text{ permutes } A$ 
  shows  $\text{image\_mset } p (\text{mset\_set } A) = \text{mset\_set } A$ 
  using assms by (metis image_mset_mset_set bij_betw_imp_inj_on permutes_imp_bij permutes_image)

lemma permutes_implies_image_mset_eq:
  assumes  $p \text{ permutes } A \wedge x. x \in A \implies f x = f' (p x)$ 
  shows  $\text{image\_mset } f' (\text{mset\_set } A) = \text{image\_mset } f (\text{mset\_set } A)$ 

```

```

proof –
  have  $f\ x = f'\ (p\ x)$  if  $x \in \# \text{ mset\_set } A$  for  $x$ 
    using  $\text{assms}(2)[\text{of } x]$  that by ( $\text{cases finite } A$ ) auto
  with  $\text{assms}$  have  $\text{image\_mset } f\ (\text{mset\_set } A) = \text{image\_mset } (f' \circ p)\ (\text{mset\_set } A)$ 
  by (auto intro!: image_mset_cong)
  also have  $\dots = \text{image\_mset } f'\ (\text{image\_mset } p\ (\text{mset\_set } A))$ 
    by (simp add: image_mset.compositionality)
  also have  $\dots = \text{image\_mset } f'\ (\text{mset\_set } A)$ 
  proof –
    from  $\text{assms permutes\_image\_mset}$  have  $\text{image\_mset } p\ (\text{mset\_set } A) = \text{mset\_set } A$ 
    by blast
    then show  $?thesis$  by simp
  qed
  finally show  $?thesis ..$ 
qed

```

### 3.3 Group properties

**lemma**  $\text{permutes\_compose}$ :  $p \text{ permutes } S \implies q \text{ permutes } S \implies q \circ p \text{ permutes } S$   
**unfolding**  $\text{permutes\_def o\_def}$  **by** *metis*

**lemma**  $\text{permutes\_inv}$ :  
**assumes**  $p \text{ permutes } S$   
**shows**  $\text{inv } p \text{ permutes } S$   
**using**  $\text{assms}$  **unfolding**  $\text{permutes\_def permutes\_inv\_eq}[OF \text{ assms}]$  **by** *metis*

**lemma**  $\text{permutes\_inv\_inv}$ :  
**assumes**  $p \text{ permutes } S$   
**shows**  $\text{inv } (\text{inv } p) = p$   
**unfolding**  $\text{fun\_eq\_iff permutes\_inv\_eq}[OF \text{ assms}]$   $\text{permutes\_inv\_eq}[OF \text{ permutes\_inv}[OF \text{ assms}]]$   
**by** *blast*

**lemma**  $\text{permutes\_invI}$ :  
**assumes**  $\text{perm}: p \text{ permutes } S$   
**and**  $\text{inv}: \bigwedge x. x \in S \implies p'\ (p\ x) = x$   
**and**  $\text{outside}: \bigwedge x. x \notin S \implies p'\ x = x$   
**shows**  $\text{inv } p = p'$

**proof**  
**show**  $\text{inv } p\ x = p'\ x$  **for**  $x$   
**proof** ( $\text{cases } x \in S$ )  
**case** *True*  
**from**  $\text{assms}$  **have**  $p'\ x = p'\ (p\ (\text{inv } p\ x))$   
**by** (*simp add: permutes\_inverses*)  
**also** **from**  $\text{permutes\_inv}[OF \text{ perm}]$  *True* **have**  $\dots = \text{inv } p\ x$   
**by** (*subst inv*) (*simp\_all add: permutes\_in\_image*)  
**finally** **show**  $?thesis ..$

```

next
  case False
  with permutes_inv[OF perm] show ?thesis
    by (simp_all add: outside permutes_not_in)
qed
qed

```

```

lemma permutes_vimage: f permutes A  $\implies$  f -' A = A
  by (simp add: bij_vimage_eq_inv_image permutes_bij permutes_image[OF permutes_inv])

```

### 3.4 Restricting a permutation to a subset

```

definition restrict_id :: ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'a)  $\Rightarrow$  'a set  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a
  where restrict_id f A = ( $\lambda x$ . if x  $\in$  A then f x else x)

```

```

lemma restrict_id_cong [cong]:
  assumes  $\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies f x = g x$  A = B
  shows restrict_id f A = restrict_id g B
  using assms unfolding restrict_id_def by auto

```

```

lemma restrict_id_cong':
  assumes  $x \in A \implies f x = g x$  A = B
  shows restrict_id f A x = restrict_id g B x
  using assms unfolding restrict_id_def by auto

```

```

lemma restrict_id_simps [simp]:
   $x \in A \implies$  restrict_id f A x = f x
   $x \notin A \implies$  restrict_id f A x = x
  by (auto simp: restrict_id_def)

```

```

lemma bij_betw_restrict_id:
  assumes bij_betw f A A A  $\subseteq$  B
  shows bij_betw (restrict_id f A) B B
proof -
  have bij_betw (restrict_id f A) (A  $\cup$  (B - A)) (A  $\cup$  (B - A))
    unfolding restrict_id_def
    by (rule bij_betw_disjoint_Un) (use assms in <auto intro: bij_betwI>)
  also have A  $\cup$  (B - A) = B
    using assms(2) by blast
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

```

lemma permutes_restrict_id:
  assumes bij_betw f A A
  shows restrict_id f A permutes A
  by (intro bij_imp_permutes bij_betw_restrict_id assms) auto

```

### 3.5 Mapping a permutation

**definition**  $\text{map\_permutation} :: 'a \text{ set} \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'b) \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow 'b$  where  
 $\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ p = \text{restrict\_id } (f \circ p \circ \text{inv\_into } A \ f) \ (f \text{ ` } A)$

**lemma**  $\text{map\_permutation\_cong\_strong}$ :

**assumes**  $A = B \ \wedge x. x \in A \implies f \ x = g \ x \ \wedge x. x \in A \implies p \ x = q \ x$

**assumes**  $p \text{ ` } A \subseteq A \ \text{inj\_on } f \ A$

**shows**  $\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ p = \text{map\_permutation } B \ g \ q$

**proof** –

**have**  $fg: f \ x = g \ y \ \text{if } x \in A \ x = y \ \text{for } x \ y$

**using**  $\text{assms}(2)$  **that** **by**  $\text{simp}$

**have**  $pq: p \ x = q \ y \ \text{if } x \in A \ x = y \ \text{for } x \ y$

**using**  $\text{assms}(3)$  **that** **by**  $\text{simp}$

**have**  $p: p \ x \in A \ \text{if } x \in A \ \text{for } x$

**using**  $\text{assms}(4)$  **that** **by**  $\text{blast}$

**have**  $\text{inv}: \text{inv\_into } A \ f \ x = \text{inv\_into } B \ g \ y \ \text{if } x \in f \text{ ` } A \ x = y \ \text{for } x \ y$

**proof** –

**from** **that** **obtain**  $u$  **where**  $u: u \in A \ x = f \ u$

**by**  $\text{blast}$

**have**  $\text{inv\_into } A \ f \ (f \ u) = \text{inv\_into } A \ g \ (f \ u)$

**using**  $\langle \text{inj\_on } f \ A \rangle \ u(1)$  **by**  $(\text{metis } \text{assms}(2) \ \text{inj\_on\_cong } \text{inv\_into\_f\_f})$

**thus**  $?thesis$

**using**  $u \ \langle x = y \rangle \ \langle A = B \rangle$  **by**  $\text{simp}$

**qed**

**show**  $?thesis$

**unfolding**  $\text{map\_permutation\_def } o\_def$

**by**  $(\text{intro } \text{restrict\_id\_cong } \text{image\_cong } fg \ pq \ \text{inv\_into\_into } p \ \text{inv}) \ (\text{auto } \text{simp: } \langle A = B \rangle)$

**qed**

**lemma**  $\text{map\_permutation\_cong}$ :

**assumes**  $\text{inj\_on } f \ A \ p \ \text{permutes } A$

**assumes**  $A = B \ \wedge x. x \in A \implies f \ x = g \ x \ \wedge x. x \in A \implies p \ x = q \ x$

**shows**  $\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ p = \text{map\_permutation } B \ g \ q$

**proof**  $(\text{intro } \text{map\_permutation\_cong\_strong } \text{assms})$

**show**  $p \text{ ` } A \subseteq A$

**using**  $\langle p \ \text{permutes } A \rangle$  **by**  $(\text{simp } \text{add: } \text{permutes\_image})$

**qed**  $\text{auto}$

**lemma**  $\text{inv\_into\_id} \ [\text{simp}]: x \in A \implies \text{inv\_into } A \ \text{id} \ x = x$

**by**  $(\text{metis } f\_ \text{inv\_into\_f } \text{id\_apply } \text{image\_eqI})$

**lemma**  $\text{inv\_into\_ident} \ [\text{simp}]: x \in A \implies \text{inv\_into } A \ (\lambda x. x) \ x = x$

**by**  $(\text{metis } f\_ \text{inv\_into\_f } \text{image\_eqI})$

**lemma**  $\text{map\_permutation\_id} \ [\text{simp}]: p \ \text{permutes } A \implies \text{map\_permutation } A \ \text{id} \ p = p$

**by**  $(\text{auto } \text{simp: } \text{fun\_eq\_iff } \text{map\_permutation\_def } \text{restrict\_id\_def } \text{permutes\_not\_in})$

**lemma** *map\_permutation\_ident* [*simp*]:  $p$  permutes  $A \implies \text{map\_permutation } A$   
 $(\lambda x. x) p = p$   
**by** (*auto simp: fun\_eq\_iff map\_permutation\_def restrict\_id\_def permutes\_not\_in*)

**lemma** *map\_permutation\_id'*:  $\text{inj\_on } f A \implies \text{map\_permutation } A f \text{ id} = \text{id}$   
**unfolding** *map\_permutation\_def* **by** (*auto simp: restrict\_id\_def fun\_eq\_iff*)

**lemma** *map\_permutation\_ident'*:  $\text{inj\_on } f A \implies \text{map\_permutation } A f (\lambda x. x)$   
 $= (\lambda x. x)$   
**unfolding** *map\_permutation\_def* **by** (*auto simp: restrict\_id\_def fun\_eq\_iff*)

**lemma** *map\_permutation\_permutes*:  
**assumes** *bij\_betw*  $f A B$   $p$  permutes  $A$   
**shows** *map\_permutation*  $A f p$  permutes  $B$   
**proof** (*rule bij\_imp\_permutes*)  
**have**  $f\_A: f 'A = B$   
**using** *assms(1)* **by** (*auto simp: bij\_betw\_def*)  
**from** *assms(2)* **have** *bij\_betw*  $p A A$   
**by** (*simp add: permutes\_imp\_bij*)  
**show** *bij\_betw* (*map\_permutation*  $A f p$ )  $B B$   
**unfolding** *map\_permutation\_def f\_A*  
**by** (*rule bij\_betw\_restrict\_id bij\_betw\_trans bij\_betw\_inv\_into assms(1)*  
*permutes\_imp\_bij[OF assms(2)] order.refl*)  
**show** *map\_permutation*  $A f p x = x$  **if**  $x \notin B$  **for**  $x$   
**using** *that unfolding map\_permutation\_def f\_A by simp*  
**qed**

**lemma** *map\_permutation\_compose*:  
**fixes**  $f :: 'a \Rightarrow 'b$  **and**  $g :: 'b \Rightarrow 'c$   
**assumes** *bij\_betw*  $f A B$  *inj\_on*  $g B$   
**shows** *map\_permutation*  $B g$  (*map\_permutation*  $A f p$ ) = *map\_permutation*  $A$   
 $(g \circ f) p$   
**proof**  
**fix**  $c :: 'c$   
**have** *bij\_g: bij\_betw*  $g B (g 'B)$   
**using**  $\langle \text{inj\_on } g B \rangle$  **unfolding** *bij\_betw\_def* **by** *blast*  
**have** [*simp*]:  $f x = f y \iff x = y$  **if**  $x \in A$   $y \in A$  **for**  $x y$   
**using** *assms(1)* **that** **by** (*auto simp: bij\_betw\_def inj\_on\_def*)  
**have** [*simp*]:  $g x = g y \iff x = y$  **if**  $x \in B$   $y \in B$  **for**  $x y$   
**using** *assms(2)* **that** **by** (*auto simp: bij\_betw\_def inj\_on\_def*)  
**show** *map\_permutation*  $B g$  (*map\_permutation*  $A f p$ )  $c = \text{map\_permutation } A$   
 $(g \circ f) p c$   
**proof** (*cases*  $c \in g 'B$ )  
**case**  $c: \text{True}$   
**then obtain**  $a$  **where**  $a: a \in A$   $c = g (f a)$   
**using** *assms(1,2)* **unfolding** *bij\_betw\_def* **by** *auto*  
**have** *map\_permutation*  $B g$  (*map\_permutation*  $A f p$ )  $c = g (f (p a))$   
**using**  $a$  *assms* **by** (*auto simp: map\_permutation\_def restrict\_id\_def bij\_betw\_def*)

```

    also have ... = map_permutation A (g ∘ f) p c
      using a bij_betw_inv_into_left[OF bij_betw_trans[OF assms(1) bij_g]]
      by (auto simp: map_permutation_def restrict_id_def bij_betw_def)
    finally show ?thesis .
  next
    case c: False
    thus ?thesis using assms
      by (auto simp: map_permutation_def bij_betw_def restrict_id_def)
  qed
qed

lemma map_permutation_compose_inv:
  assumes bij_betw f A B p permutes A ∧ x. x ∈ A ⇒ g (f x) = x
  shows map_permutation B g (map_permutation A f p) = p
proof -
  have inj_on g B
  proof
    fix x y assume x ∈ B y ∈ B g x = g y
    then obtain x' y' where *: x' ∈ A y' : A x = f x' y = f y'
      using assms(1) unfolding bij_betw_def by blast
    thus x = y
      using assms(3)[of x'] assms(3)[of y'] ⟨g x = g y⟩ by simp
  qed
  have map_permutation B g (map_permutation A f p) = map_permutation A (g
    ∘ f) p
    by (rule map_permutation_compose) (use assms ⟨inj_on g B⟩ in auto)
  also have ... = map_permutation A id p
    by (intro map_permutation_cong assms comp_inj_on)
      (use ⟨inj_on g B⟩ assms(1,3) in ⟨auto simp: bij_betw_def⟩)
  also have ... = p
    by (rule map_permutation_id) fact
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

lemma map_permutation_apply:
  assumes inj_on f A x ∈ A
  shows map_permutation A f h (f x) = f (h x)
  using assms by (auto simp: map_permutation_def inj_on_def)

lemma map_permutation_compose':
  fixes f :: 'a ⇒ 'b
  assumes inj_on f A q permutes A
  shows map_permutation A f (p ∘ q) = map_permutation A f p ∘ map_permutation
    A f q
proof
  fix y :: 'b
  show map_permutation A f (p ∘ q) y = (map_permutation A f p ∘ map_permutation
    A f q) y

```

```

proof (cases  $y \in f \text{ ' } A$ )
  case True
    then obtain  $x$  where  $x: x \in A \ y = f \ x$ 
    by blast
    have  $\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ (p \circ q) \ y = f \ (p \ (q \ x))$ 
    unfolding  $x(2)$  by (subst map_permutation_apply) (use assms x in auto)
    also have  $\dots = (\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ p \circ \text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ q) \ y$ 
    unfolding  $x \ o\_apply$  using  $x(1)$  assms
    by (simp add: map_permutation_apply permutes_in_image)
    finally show ?thesis .
  next
    case False
    thus ?thesis
    using False by (simp add: map_permutation_def)
qed
qed

lemma map_permutation_transpose:
  assumes inj_on  $f \ A \ a \in A \ b \in A$ 
  shows  $\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ (\text{Transposition.transpose } a \ b) = \text{Transposition.transpose}$ 
 $(f \ a) \ (f \ b)$ 
proof
  fix  $y :: 'b$ 
  show  $\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ (\text{Transposition.transpose } a \ b) \ y = \text{Transposition.transpose}$ 
 $(f \ a) \ (f \ b) \ y$ 
  proof (cases  $y \in f \text{ ' } A$ )
    case False
      hence  $\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ (\text{Transposition.transpose } a \ b) \ y = y$ 
      unfolding map_permutation_def by (intro restrict_id_simps)
      moreover have  $\text{Transposition.transpose } (f \ a) \ (f \ b) \ y = y$ 
      using False assms by (intro transpose_apply_other) auto
      ultimately show ?thesis
      by simp
    next
      case True
      then obtain  $x$  where  $x: x \in A \ y = f \ x$ 
      by blast
      have  $\text{map\_permutation } A \ f \ (\text{Transposition.transpose } a \ b) \ y =$ 
 $f \ (\text{Transposition.transpose } a \ b \ x)$ 
      unfolding  $x$  by (subst map_permutation_apply) (use x assms in auto)
      also have  $\dots = \text{Transposition.transpose } (f \ a) \ (f \ b) \ y$ 
      using assms(2,3)  $x$ 
      by (auto simp: Transposition.transpose_def inj_on_eq_iff[OF assms(1)])
      finally show ?thesis .
    qed
  qed

lemma map_permutation_permutes_iff:
  assumes bij_betw  $f \ A \ B \ p \text{ ' } A \subseteq A \bigwedge x. x \notin A \implies p \ x = x$ 

```



```

  shows map_permutation A f p permutes B  $\longleftrightarrow$  p permutes A
proof
  assume p permutes A
  thus map_permutation A f p permutes B
    by (intro map_permutation_permutes assms)
next
  assume *: map_permutation A f p permutes B
  hence map_permutation B (inv_into A f) (map_permutation A f p) permutes
A
    by (rule map_permutation_permutes[OF bij_betw_inv_into[OF assms(1)]])
  also have map_permutation B (inv_into A f) (map_permutation A f p) =
    map_permutation A (inv_into A f  $\circ$  f) p
    by (rule map_permutation_compose[OF _ inj_on_inv_into])
    (use assms in ⟨auto simp: bij_betw_def⟩)
  also have ... = map_permutation A id p
    unfolding o_def id_def
    by (rule sym, intro map_permutation_cong_strong inv_into_f[symmetric]
      assms(2) bij_betw_imp_inj_on[OF assms(1)]) auto
  also have ... = p
    unfolding map_permutation_def using assms(3)
    by (auto simp: restrict_id_def fun_eq_iff split: if_splits)
  finally show p permutes A .
qed

lemma bij_betw_permutations:
  assumes bij_betw f A B
  shows bij_betw ( $\lambda x. \text{if } x \in B \text{ then } f (\pi (\text{inv\_into } A f x)) \text{ else } x$ )
    { $\pi. \pi \text{ permutes } A$ } { $\pi. \pi \text{ permutes } B$ } (is bij_betw ?f _ _)
proof -
  let ?g = ( $\lambda x. \text{if } x \in A \text{ then } \text{inv\_into } A f (\pi (f x)) \text{ else } x$ )
  show ?thesis
proof (rule bij_betw_byWitness [of _ ?g], goal_cases)
  case 3
  show ?case using permutes_bij_inv_into[OF _ assms] by auto
next
  case 4
  have bij_inv: bij_betw (inv_into A f) B A by (intro bij_betw_inv_into assms)
  {
    fix  $\pi$  assume  $\pi \text{ permutes } B$ 
    from permutes_bij_inv_into[OF this bij_inv] and assms
    have ( $\lambda x. \text{if } x \in A \text{ then } \text{inv\_into } A f (\pi (f x)) \text{ else } x$ ) permutes A
    by (simp add: inv_into_inv_into_eq cong: if_cong)
  }
  from this show ?case by (auto simp: permutes_inv)
next
  case 1
  thus ?case using assms
  by (auto simp: fun_eq_iff permutes_not_in permutes_in_image bij_betw_inv_into_left
    dest: bij_betwE)

```

```

next
  case 2
  moreover have  $\text{bij\_betw } (\text{inv\_into } A \ f) \ B \ A$ 
    by (intro  $\text{bij\_betw\_inv\_into } \text{assms}$ )
  ultimately show ?case using  $\text{assms}$ 
    by (auto simp:  $\text{fun\_eq\_iff } \text{permutes\_not\_in } \text{permutes\_in\_image } \text{bij\_betw\_inv\_into\_right}$ 
        dest:  $\text{bij\_betwE}$ )
qed
qed

lemma  $\text{bij\_betw\_derangements}$ :
  assumes  $\text{bij\_betw } f \ A \ B$ 
  shows  $\text{bij\_betw } (\lambda \pi \ x. \text{if } x \in B \text{ then } f \ (\pi \ (\text{inv\_into } A \ f \ x)) \text{ else } x) \ \{ \pi. \pi \text{ permutes } A \wedge (\forall x \in A. \pi \ x \neq x) \} \ \{ \pi. \pi \text{ permutes } B \wedge (\forall x \in B. \pi \ x \neq x) \}$ 
    (is  $\text{bij\_betw } ?f \ \_ \ \_$ )
proof -
  let ?g =  $(\lambda \pi \ x. \text{if } x \in A \text{ then } \text{inv\_into } A \ f \ (\pi \ (f \ x)) \text{ else } x)$ 
  show ?thesis
  proof (rule  $\text{bij\_betw\_byWitness } [\text{of } \_ \ ?g], \text{goal\_cases}$ )
    case 3
    have  $?f \ \pi \ x \neq x \text{ if } \pi \text{ permutes } A \wedge x. x \in A \implies \pi \ x \neq x \ x \in B \text{ for } \pi \ x$ 
    using that and  $\text{assms}$  by (metis  $\text{bij\_betwE } \text{bij\_betw\_imp\_inj\_on } \text{bij\_betw\_imp\_surj\_on } \text{inv\_into\_f\_f } \text{inv\_into\_into } \text{permutes\_imp\_bij}$ )
    with  $\text{permutes\_bij\_inv\_into}[OF \ \_ \ \text{assms}]$  show ?case by auto
  next
    case 4
    have  $\text{bij\_inv: } \text{bij\_betw } (\text{inv\_into } A \ f) \ B \ A$  by (intro  $\text{bij\_betw\_inv\_into } \text{assms}$ )
    have  $?g \ \pi \text{ permutes } A \text{ if } \pi \text{ permutes } B \text{ for } \pi$ 
      using  $\text{permutes\_bij\_inv\_into}[OF \ \text{that } \text{bij\_inv}]$  and  $\text{assms}$ 
      by (simp add:  $\text{inv\_into\_inv\_into\_eq } \text{cong: if\_cong}$ )
    moreover have  $?g \ \pi \ x \neq x \text{ if } \pi \text{ permutes } B \wedge x. x \in B \implies \pi \ x \neq x \ x \in A$ 
  next
    for  $\pi \ x$ 
    using that and  $\text{assms}$  by (metis  $\text{bij\_betwE } \text{bij\_betw\_imp\_surj\_on } f \ \text{inv\_into\_f } \text{permutes\_imp\_bij}$ )
    ultimately show ?case by auto
  next
    case 1
    thus ?case using  $\text{assms}$ 
    by (force simp:  $\text{fun\_eq\_iff } \text{permutes\_not\_in } \text{permutes\_in\_image } \text{bij\_betw\_inv\_into\_left}$ 
        dest:  $\text{bij\_betwE}$ )
  next
    case 2
    moreover have  $\text{bij\_betw } (\text{inv\_into } A \ f) \ B \ A$ 
      by (intro  $\text{bij\_betw\_inv\_into } \text{assms}$ )
    ultimately show ?case using  $\text{assms}$ 
    by (force simp:  $\text{fun\_eq\_iff } \text{permutes\_not\_in } \text{permutes\_in\_image } \text{bij\_betw\_inv\_into\_right}$ 

```

```

      dest: bij_betwE)
qed
qed

```

### 3.6 The number of permutations on a finite set

```

lemma permutes_insert_lemma:
  assumes p permutes (insert a S)
  shows transpose a (p a) ∘ p permutes S
proof (rule permutes_superset[where S = insert a S])
  show Transposition.transpose a (p a) ∘ p permutes insert a S
  by (meson assms insertI1 permutes_compose permutes_in_image permutes_swap_id)
qed auto

```

```

lemma permutes_insert: {p. p permutes (insert a S)} =
  (λ(b, p). transpose a b ∘ p) ' {(b, p). b ∈ insert a S ∧ p ∈ {p. p permutes S}}
proof -
  have p permutes insert a S ⟷
    (∃ b q. p = transpose a b ∘ q ∧ b ∈ insert a S ∧ q permutes S) for p
  proof -
    have ∃ b q. p = transpose a b ∘ q ∧ b ∈ insert a S ∧ q permutes S
    if p: p permutes insert a S
    proof -
      let ?b = p a
      let ?q = transpose a (p a) ∘ p
      have *: p = transpose a ?b ∘ ?q
      by (simp add: fun_eq_iff o_assoc)
      have **: ?b ∈ insert a S
      unfolding permutes_in_image[OF p] by simp
      from permutes_insert_lemma[OF p] * ** show ?thesis
      by blast
    qed
  moreover have p permutes insert a S
  if bq: p = transpose a b ∘ q b ∈ insert a S q permutes S for b q
  proof -
    from permutes_subset[OF bq(3), of insert a S] have q: q permutes insert a S
    by auto
    have a: a ∈ insert a S
    by simp
    from bq(1) permutes_compose[OF q permutes_swap_id[OF a bq(2)]] show
    ?thesis
    by simp
  qed
  ultimately show ?thesis by blast
qed
then show ?thesis by auto
qed

```

```

lemma card_permutations:

```

```

assumes  $\text{card } S = n$ 
and  $\text{finite } S$ 
shows  $\text{card } \{p. p \text{ permutes } S\} = \text{fact } n$ 
using  $\text{assms}(2,1)$ 
proof ( $\text{induct arbitrary: } n$ )
  case  $\text{empty}$ 
  then show  $?case$  by  $\text{simp}$ 
next
  case ( $\text{insert } x \ F$ )
  {
    fix  $n$ 
    assume  $\text{card\_insert: card } (\text{insert } x \ F) = n$ 
    let  $?xF = \{p. p \text{ permutes } \text{insert } x \ F\}$ 
    let  $?pF = \{p. p \text{ permutes } F\}$ 
    let  $?pF' = \{(b, p). b \in \text{insert } x \ F \wedge p \in ?pF\}$ 
    let  $?g = (\lambda(b, p). \text{transpose } x \ b \circ p)$ 
    have  $xfgpF': ?xF = ?g \circ ?pF'$ 
    by ( $\text{rule permutes\_insert[of } x \ F]$ )
    from  $\langle x \notin F \rangle \langle \text{finite } F \rangle \text{card\_insert}$  have  $Fs: \text{card } F = n - 1$ 
    by  $\text{auto}$ 
    from  $\langle \text{finite } F \rangle \text{insert.hyps } Fs$  have  $pFs: \text{card } ?pF = \text{fact } (n - 1)$ 
    by  $\text{auto}$ 
    then have  $\text{finite } ?pF$ 
    by ( $\text{auto intro: card\_ge\_0\_finite}$ )
    with  $\langle \text{finite } F \rangle \text{card.insert\_remove}$  have  $pF'f: \text{finite } ?pF'$ 
    by  $\text{simp}$ 
    have  $\text{ginj: inj\_on } ?g \ ?pF'$ 
    proof -
    {
      fix  $b \ p \ c \ q$ 
      assume  $bp: (b, p) \in ?pF'$ 
      assume  $cq: (c, q) \in ?pF'$ 
      assume  $eq: ?g \ (b, p) = ?g \ (c, q)$ 
      from  $bp \ cq$  have  $pF: p \text{ permutes } F$  and  $qF: q \text{ permutes } F$ 
      by  $\text{auto}$ 
      from  $pF \ \langle x \notin F \rangle \ eq$  have  $b = ?g \ (b, p) \ x$ 
      by ( $\text{auto simp: permutes\_def fun\_upd\_def fun\_eq\_iff}$ )
      also from  $qF \ \langle x \notin F \rangle \ eq$  have  $\dots = ?g \ (c, q) \ x$ 
      by ( $\text{auto simp: fun\_upd\_def fun\_eq\_iff}$ )
      also from  $qF \ \langle x \notin F \rangle$  have  $\dots = c$ 
      by ( $\text{auto simp: permutes\_def fun\_upd\_def fun\_eq\_iff}$ )
      finally have  $b = c$  .
      then have  $\text{transpose } x \ b = \text{transpose } x \ c$ 
      by  $\text{simp}$ 
      with  $eq$  have  $\text{transpose } x \ b \circ p = \text{transpose } x \ b \circ q$ 
      by  $\text{simp}$ 
      then have  $\text{transpose } x \ b \circ (\text{transpose } x \ b \circ p) = \text{transpose } x \ b \circ (\text{transpose } x \ b \circ q)$ 
      by  $\text{simp}$ 

```

```

    then have  $p = q$ 
      by (simp add:  $o\_assoc$ )
    with  $\langle b = c \rangle$  have  $(b, p) = (c, q)$ 
      by simp
  }
  then show ?thesis
    unfolding  $inj\_on\_def$  by blast
qed
from  $\langle x \notin F \rangle \langle finite\ F \rangle$  card_insert have  $n \neq 0$ 
  by auto
then have  $\exists m. n = Suc\ m$ 
  by presburger
then obtain  $m$  where  $n: n = Suc\ m$ 
  by blast
from  $pFs$  card_insert have  $*$ :  $card\ ?xF = fact\ n$ 
  unfolding  $xfgpF'$  card_image[OF  $ginj$ ]
  using  $\langle finite\ F \rangle \langle finite\ ?pF \rangle$ 
  by (simp only: Collect_case_prod Collect_mem_eq card_cartesian_product)
(simp add:  $n$ )
from  $finite\_imageI$ [OF  $pF'f$ , of  $?g$ ] have  $xFf: finite\ ?xF$ 
  by (simp add:  $xfgpF'$   $n$ )
from  $*$  have  $card\ ?xF = fact\ n$ 
  unfolding  $xFf$  by blast
}
with insert show ?case by simp
qed

lemma finite_permutations:
  assumes finite  $S$ 
  shows  $finite\ \{p. p\ permut es\ S\}$ 
  using card_permutations[OF refl assms] by (auto intro: card_ge_0_finite)

lemma permutes_doubleton_iff:  $f\ permut es\ \{a, b\} \longleftrightarrow f = id \vee f = Transposition.transpose\ a\ b$ 
proof (cases  $a = b$ )
  case False
  have  $\{id, Transposition.transpose\ a\ b\} \subseteq \{f. f\ permut es\ \{a, b\}\}$ 
    by (auto simp: permutes_id permutes_swap_id)
  moreover have  $id \neq Transposition.transpose\ a\ b$ 
    using False by (auto simp: fun_eq_iff Transposition.transpose_def)
  hence  $card\ \{id, Transposition.transpose\ a\ b\} = card\ \{f. f\ permut es\ \{a, b\}\}$ 
    using False by (simp add: card_permutations)
  ultimately have  $\{id, Transposition.transpose\ a\ b\} = \{f. f\ permut es\ \{a, b\}\}$ 
    by (intro card_subset_eq finite_permutations) auto
  thus ?thesis by auto
qed auto

```

### 3.7 Permutations of index set for iterated operations

```

lemma (in comm_monoid_set) permute:
  assumes  $p$  permutes  $S$ 
  shows  $F\ g\ S = F\ (g \circ p)\ S$ 
proof -
  from  $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  have  $\text{inj } p$ 
    by (rule permutes_inj)
  then have  $\text{inj\_on } p\ S$ 
    by (auto intro: inj_on_subset)
  then have  $F\ g\ (p \text{ ` } S) = F\ (g \circ p)\ S$ 
    by (rule reindex)
  moreover from  $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  have  $p \text{ ` } S = S$ 
    by (rule permutes_image)
  ultimately show ?thesis
    by simp
qed

```

### 3.8 Permutations as transposition sequences

```

inductive swapidseq :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'a)  $\Rightarrow$  bool
  where
    id[simp]: swapidseq 0 id
    | comp_Suc: swapidseq n p  $\Longrightarrow$  a  $\neq$  b  $\Longrightarrow$  swapidseq (Suc n) (transpose a b  $\circ$  p)

declare id[unfolded id_def, simp]

definition permutation p  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\exists n$ . swapidseq n p)

```

### 3.9 Some closure properties of the set of permutations, with lengths

```

lemma permutation_id[simp]: permutation id
  unfolding permutation_def by (rule exI[where x=0]) simp

declare permutation_id[unfolded id_def, simp]

lemma swapidseq_swap: swapidseq (if a = b then 0 else 1) (transpose a b)
  using swapidseq.simps by fastforce

lemma permutation_swap_id: permutation (transpose a b)
  by (meson permutation_def swapidseq_swap)

lemma swapidseq_comp_add: swapidseq n p  $\Longrightarrow$  swapidseq m q  $\Longrightarrow$  swapidseq (n + m) (p  $\circ$  q)
proof (induct n p arbitrary: m q rule: swapidseq.induct)
  case (id m q)
  then show ?case by simp
next

```

```

    case (comp_Suc n p a b m q)
    then show ?case
      by (metis add_Suc comp_assoc swapidseq.comp_Suc)
qed

lemma permutation_compose: permutation p  $\implies$  permutation q  $\implies$  permutation
(p  $\circ$  q)
  unfolding permutation_def using swapidseq_comp_add[of _ p _ q] by metis

lemma swapidseq_endswap: swapidseq n p  $\implies$  a  $\neq$  b  $\implies$  swapidseq (Suc n) (p  $\circ$ 
transpose a b)
  by (induct n p rule: swapidseq.induct)
    (use swapidseq_swap[of a b] in  $\langle$ auto simp add: comp_assoc intro: swapid-
seq.comp_Suc $\rangle$ )

lemma swapidseq_inverse_exists: swapidseq n p  $\implies$   $\exists$  q. swapidseq n q  $\wedge$  p  $\circ$  q =
id  $\wedge$  q  $\circ$  p = id
proof (induct n p rule: swapidseq.induct)
  case id
  then show ?case
    by (rule exI[where x=id]) simp
next
  case (comp_Suc n p a b)
  from comp_Suc.hyps obtain q where q: swapidseq n q p  $\circ$  q = id q  $\circ$  p = id
  by blast
  let ?q = q  $\circ$  transpose a b
  note H = comp_Suc.hyps
  from swapidseq_swap[of a b] H(3) have *: swapidseq 1 (transpose a b)
  by simp
  from swapidseq_comp_add[OF q(1) *] have **: swapidseq (Suc n) ?q
  by simp
  have transpose a b  $\circ$  p  $\circ$  ?q = transpose a b  $\circ$  (p  $\circ$  q)  $\circ$  transpose a b
  by (simp add: o_assoc)
  also have ... = id
  by (simp add: q(2))
  finally have ***: transpose a b  $\circ$  p  $\circ$  ?q = id .
  have ?q  $\circ$  (transpose a b  $\circ$  p) = q  $\circ$  (transpose a b  $\circ$  transpose a b)  $\circ$  p
  by (simp only: o_assoc)
  then have ?q  $\circ$  (transpose a b  $\circ$  p) = id
  by (simp add: q(3))
  with ** *** show ?case
  by blast
qed

lemma swapidseq_inverse:
  assumes swapidseq n p
  shows swapidseq n (inv p)
  using swapidseq_inverse_exists[OF assms] inv_unique_comp[of p] by auto

```

**lemma** *permutation\_inverse*:  $\text{permutation } p \implies \text{permutation } (\text{inv } p)$   
**using** *permutation\_def swapidseq\_inverse* **by** *blast*

### 3.10 Various combinations of transpositions with 2, 1 and 0 common elements

**lemma** *swap\_id\_common*:  $a \neq c \implies b \neq c \implies$   
 $\text{transpose } a \ b \circ \text{transpose } a \ c = \text{transpose } b \ c \circ \text{transpose } a \ b$   
**by** (*simp add: fun\_eq\_iff transpose\_def*)

**lemma** *swap\_id\_common'*:  $a \neq b \implies a \neq c \implies$   
 $\text{transpose } a \ c \circ \text{transpose } b \ c = \text{transpose } b \ c \circ \text{transpose } a \ b$   
**by** (*simp add: fun\_eq\_iff transpose\_def*)

**lemma** *swap\_id\_independent*:  $a \neq c \implies a \neq d \implies b \neq c \implies b \neq d \implies$   
 $\text{transpose } a \ b \circ \text{transpose } c \ d = \text{transpose } c \ d \circ \text{transpose } a \ b$   
**by** (*simp add: fun\_eq\_iff transpose\_def*)

### 3.11 The identity map only has even transposition sequences

**lemma** *symmetry\_lemma*:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge a \ b \ c \ d. P \ a \ b \ c \ d \implies P \ a \ b \ d \ c$   
**and**  $\bigwedge a \ b \ c \ d. a \neq b \implies c \neq d \implies$   
 $a = c \wedge b = d \vee a = c \wedge b \neq d \vee a \neq c \wedge b = d \vee a \neq c \wedge a \neq d \wedge b \neq c$   
 $\wedge b \neq d \implies$   
 $P \ a \ b \ c \ d$   
**shows**  $\bigwedge a \ b \ c \ d. a \neq b \longrightarrow c \neq d \longrightarrow P \ a \ b \ c \ d$   
**using** *assms* **by** *metis*

**lemma** *swap\_general*:  
**assumes**  $a \neq b \ c \neq d$   
**shows**  $\text{transpose } a \ b \circ \text{transpose } c \ d = \text{id} \vee$   
 $(\exists x \ y \ z. x \neq a \wedge y \neq a \wedge z \neq a \wedge x \neq y \wedge$   
 $\text{transpose } a \ b \circ \text{transpose } c \ d = \text{transpose } x \ y \circ \text{transpose } a \ z)$   
**by** (*metis assms swap\_id\_common' swap\_id\_independent transpose\_commute transpose\_comp\_involutory*)

**lemma** *swapidseq\_id\_iff*[*simp*]:  $\text{swapidseq } 0 \ p \longleftrightarrow p = \text{id}$   
**using** *swapidseq.cases*[*of*  $0 \ p \ p = \text{id}$ ] **by** *auto*

**lemma** *swapidseq\_cases*:  $\text{swapidseq } n \ p \longleftrightarrow$   
 $n = 0 \wedge p = \text{id} \vee (\exists a \ b \ q \ m. n = \text{Suc } m \wedge p = \text{transpose } a \ b \circ q \wedge \text{swapidseq}$   
 $m \ q \wedge a \neq b)$   
**by** (*meson comp\_Suc id swapidseq.cases*)

**lemma** *fixing\_swapidseq\_decrease*:  
**assumes**  $\text{swapidseq } n \ p$   
**and**  $a \neq b$   
**and**  $(\text{transpose } a \ b \circ p) \ a = a$



```

shows  $n \neq 0 \wedge \text{swapidseq } (n - 1) (\text{transpose } a \ b \circ p)$ 
using assms
proof (induct n arbitrary:  $p \ a \ b$ )
  case 0
  then show ?case
    by (auto simp add: fun_upd_def)
next
case (Suc  $n \ p \ a \ b$ )
from Suc.prem1 swapidseq_cases[of Suc  $n \ p$ ]
obtain  $c \ d \ q \ m$  where
   $cdqm: \text{Suc } n = \text{Suc } m \ p = \text{transpose } c \ d \circ q \ \text{swapidseq } m \ q \ c \neq d \ n = m$ 
  by auto
consider  $\text{transpose } a \ b \circ \text{transpose } c \ d = \text{id}$ 
  |  $x \ y \ z$  where  $x \neq a \ y \neq a \ z \neq a \ x \neq y$ 
   $\text{transpose } a \ b \circ \text{transpose } c \ d = \text{transpose } x \ y \circ \text{transpose } a \ z$ 
  using swap_general[OF Suc.prem2 cdqm(4)] by metis
then show ?case
proof cases
  case 1
  then show ?thesis
    by (simp only: cdqm o_assoc) (simp add: cdqm)
next
  case 2
  then have  $az: a \neq z$ 
    by simp
  from 2 have *:  $(\text{transpose } x \ y \circ h) \ a = a \longleftrightarrow h \ a = a$  for  $h$ 
    by (simp add: transpose_def)
  from cdqm(2) have  $\text{transpose } a \ b \circ p = \text{transpose } a \ b \circ (\text{transpose } c \ d \circ q)$ 
    by simp
  then have §:  $\text{transpose } a \ b \circ p = \text{transpose } x \ y \circ (\text{transpose } a \ z \circ q)$ 
    by (simp add: o_assoc 2)
  obtain **:  $\text{swapidseq } (n - 1) (\text{transpose } a \ z \circ q)$  and  $n \neq 0$ 
    by (metis * § Suc.hyps Suc.prem3 az cdqm(3,5))
  then have  $\text{Suc } n - 1 = \text{Suc } (n - 1)$ 
    by auto
  with 2 show ?thesis
    using ** § swapidseq.simps by blast
qed
qed

lemma swapidseq_identity_even:
  assumes  $\text{swapidseq } n \ (id :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a)$ 
  shows  $\text{even } n$ 
  using ⟨swapidseq  $n \ id$ ⟩
proof (induct  $n$  rule: nat_less_induct)
  case H: (1  $n$ )
  consider  $n = 0$ 
    |  $a \ b :: 'a$  and  $q \ m$  where  $n = \text{Suc } m \ id = \text{transpose } a \ b \circ q \ \text{swapidseq } m \ q \ a \neq b$ 

```

```

    using  $H(2)[unfolded\ swapidseq\_cases[of\ n\ id]]$  by auto
  then show ?case
proof cases
  case 1
  then show ?thesis by presburger
next
  case  $h: 2$ 
  from  $fixing\_swapidseq\_decrease[OF\ h(3,4),\ unfolded\ h(2)[symmetric]]$ 
  have  $m: m \neq 0\ swapidseq\ (m - 1)\ (id :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a)$ 
  by auto
  from  $h\ m$  have  $mn: m - 1 < n$ 
  by arith
  from  $H(1)[rule\_format,\ OF\ mn\ m(2)]\ h(1)\ m(1)$  show ?thesis
  by presburger
qed
qed

```

### 3.12 Therefore we have a welldefined notion of parity

**definition**  $evenperm\ p = even\ (SOME\ n.\ swapidseq\ n\ p)$

```

lemma  $swapidseq\_even\_even$ :
  assumes  $m: swapidseq\ m\ p$ 
  and  $n: swapidseq\ n\ p$ 
  shows  $even\ m \longleftrightarrow even\ n$ 
proof -
  from  $swapidseq\_inverse\_exists[OF\ n]$  obtain  $q$  where  $q: swapidseq\ n\ q\ p \circ q$ 
  =  $id\ q \circ p = id$ 
  by blast
  from  $swapidseq\_identity\_even[OF\ swapidseq\_comp\_add[OF\ m\ q(1),\ unfolded\ q]]$ 
  show ?thesis
  by arith
qed

```

```

lemma  $evenperm\_unique$ :
  assumes  $swapidseq\ n\ p$  and  $even\ n = b$ 
  shows  $evenperm\ p = b$ 
  by (metis  $evenperm\_def\ assms\ someI\ swapidseq\_even\_even$ )

```

### 3.13 And it has the expected composition properties

```

lemma  $evenperm\_id[simp]$ :  $evenperm\ id = True$ 
  by (rule  $evenperm\_unique[where\ n = 0]$ )  $simp\_all$ 

```

```

lemma  $evenperm\_identity\ [simp]$ :
   $\langle evenperm\ (\lambda x.\ x) \rangle$ 
  using  $evenperm\_id$  by (simp add:  $id\_def\ [abs\_def]$ )

```

```

lemma  $evenperm\_swap$ :  $evenperm\ (transpose\ a\ b) = (a = b)$ 

```

by (rule evenperm\_unique[where n=if a = b then 0 else 1]) (simp\_all add: swapidseq\_swap)

**lemma** evenperm\_comp:

assumes permutation p permutation q

shows evenperm (p  $\circ$  q)  $\longleftrightarrow$  evenperm p = evenperm q

**proof** –

from assms obtain n m where n: swapidseq n p and m: swapidseq m q

unfolding permutation\_def by blast

have even (n + m)  $\longleftrightarrow$  (even n  $\longleftrightarrow$  even m)

by arith

from evenperm\_unique[OF n refl] evenperm\_unique[OF m refl]

and evenperm\_unique[OF swapidseq\_comp\_add[OF n m] this] show ?thesis

by blast

qed

**lemma** evenperm\_inv:

assumes permutation p

shows evenperm (inv p) = evenperm p

**proof** –

from assms obtain n where n: swapidseq n p

unfolding permutation\_def by blast

show ?thesis

by (rule evenperm\_unique[OF swapidseq\_inverse[OF n] evenperm\_unique[OF n refl, symmetric]])

qed

### 3.14 A more abstract characterization of permutations

**lemma** permutation\_bijective:

assumes permutation p

shows bij p

by (meson assms o\_bij permutation\_def swapidseq\_inverse\_exists)

**lemma** permutation\_finite\_support:

assumes permutation p

shows finite {x. p x  $\neq$  x}

**proof** –

from assms obtain n where swapidseq n p

unfolding permutation\_def by blast

then show ?thesis

**proof** (induct n p rule: swapidseq.induct)

case id

then show ?case by simp

next

case (comp\_Suc n p a b)

let ?S = insert a (insert b {x. p x  $\neq$  x})

from comp\_Suc.hyps(2) have \*: finite ?S

by simp

```

    from ⟨a ≠ b⟩ have **: {x. (transpose a b ∘ p) x ≠ x} ⊆ ?S
    by auto
    show ?case
    by (rule finite_subset[OF ** *])
qed
qed

```

```

lemma permutation_lemma:
  assumes finite S
  and bij p
  and ∀x. x ∉ S ⟶ p x = x
  shows permutation p
  using assms
proof (induct S arbitrary: p rule: finite_induct)
  case empty
  then show ?case
  by simp
next
  case (insert a F p)
  let ?r = transpose a (p a) ∘ p
  let ?q = transpose a (p a) ∘ ?r
  have *: ?r a = a
  by simp
  from insert * have **: ∀x. x ∉ F ⟶ ?r x = x
  by (metis bij_pointE comp_apply id_apply insert_iff swap_apply(3))
  have bij ?r
  using insert by (simp add: bij_comp)
  have permutation ?r
  by (rule insert(3)[OF ⟨bij ?r⟩ **])
  then have permutation ?q
  by (simp add: permutation_compose permutation_swap_id)
  then show ?case
  by (simp add: o_assoc)
qed

```

```

lemma permutation: permutation p ⟷ bij p ∧ finite {x. p x ≠ x}
  using permutation_bijective permutation_finite_support permutation_lemma by
  auto

```

```

lemma permutation_inverse_works:
  assumes permutation p
  shows inv p ∘ p = id
  and p ∘ inv p = id
  using permutation_bijective [OF assms] by (auto simp: bij_def inj_iff surj_iff)

```

```

lemma permutation_inverse_compose:
  assumes p: permutation p
  and q: permutation q
  shows inv (p ∘ q) = inv q ∘ inv p

```

by (simp add: o\_inv\_distrib p permutation\_bijective q)

### 3.15 Relation to permutes

**lemma** *permutes\_imp\_permutation*:  
 $\langle \text{permutation } p \rangle$  if  $\langle \text{finite } S \rangle$   $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$   
**proof** –  
**from**  $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  **have**  $\langle \{x. p\ x \neq x\} \subseteq S \rangle$   
**by** (auto dest: permutes\_not\_in)  
**then have**  $\langle \text{finite } \{x. p\ x \neq x\} \rangle$   
**using**  $\langle \text{finite } S \rangle$  **by** (rule finite\_subset)  
**moreover from**  $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  **have**  $\langle \text{bij } p \rangle$   
**by** (auto dest: permutes\_bij)  
**ultimately show** ?thesis  
**by** (simp add: permutation)  
**qed**

**lemma** *permutation\_permutesE*:  
**assumes**  $\langle \text{permutation } p \rangle$   
**obtains**  $S$  **where**  $\langle \text{finite } S \rangle$   $\langle p \text{ permutes } S \rangle$   
**proof** –  
**from** *assms* **have** *fin*:  $\langle \text{finite } \{x. p\ x \neq x\} \rangle$   
**by** (simp add: permutation)  
**from** *assms* **have**  $\langle \text{bij } p \rangle$   
**by** (simp add: permutation)  
**also have**  $\langle \text{UNIV} = \{x. p\ x \neq x\} \cup \{x. p\ x = x\} \rangle$   
**by** auto  
**finally have**  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p\ \{x. p\ x \neq x\}\ \{x. p\ x = x\} \rangle$   
**by** (rule bij\_betw\_partition) (auto simp add: bij\_betw\_fixpoints)  
**then have**  $\langle p \text{ permutes } \{x. p\ x \neq x\} \rangle$   
**by** (auto intro: bij\_imp\_permutes)  
**with** *fin* **show** thesis ..  
**qed**

**lemma** *permutation\_permutes*:  $\text{permutation } p \longleftrightarrow (\exists S. \text{finite } S \wedge p \text{ permutes } S)$   
**by** (auto elim: permutation\_permutesE intro: permutes\_imp\_permutation)

### 3.16 Sign of a permutation

**definition** *sign* ::  $\langle 'a \Rightarrow 'a \rangle \Rightarrow \text{int}$  — TODO: prefer less generic name  
**where**  $\langle \text{sign } p = (\text{if evenperm } p \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } -1) \rangle$

**lemma** *sign\_cases* [*case\_names even odd*]:  
**obtains**  $\langle \text{sign } p = 1 \rangle \mid \langle \text{sign } p = -1 \rangle$   
**by** (cases  $\langle \text{evenperm } p \rangle$ ) (simp\_all add: sign\_def)

**lemma** *sign\_nz* [*simp*]:  $\text{sign } p \neq 0$   
**by** (cases  $p$  rule: sign\_cases) simp\_all

**lemma** *sign\_id* [*simp*]:  $\text{sign id} = 1$

```

by (simp add: sign_def)

lemma sign_identity [simp]:
  ⟨sign (λx. x) = 1⟩
  by (simp add: sign_def)

lemma sign_inverse: permutation p ⟹ sign (inv p) = sign p
  by (simp add: sign_def evenperm_inv)

lemma sign_compose: permutation p ⟹ permutation q ⟹ sign (p ∘ q) = sign
  p * sign q
  by (simp add: sign_def evenperm_comp)

lemma sign_swap_id: sign (transpose a b) = (if a = b then 1 else - 1)
  by (simp add: sign_def evenperm_swap)

lemma sign_idempotent [simp]: sign p * sign p = 1
  by (simp add: sign_def)

lemma sign_left_idempotent [simp]:
  ⟨sign p * (sign p * sign q) = sign q⟩
  by (simp add: sign_def)

lemma abs_sign [simp]: |sign p| = 1
  by (simp add: sign_def)

```

### 3.17 An induction principle in terms of transpositions

```

definition apply_transps :: ('a × 'a) list ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'a where
  apply_transps xs = foldr (∘) (map (λ(a,b). Transposition.transpose a b) xs) id

lemma apply_transps_Nil [simp]: apply_transps [] = id
  by (simp add: apply_transps_def)

lemma apply_transps_Cons [simp]:
  apply_transps (x # xs) = Transposition.transpose (fst x) (snd x) ∘ apply_transps
  xs
  by (simp add: apply_transps_def case_prod_unfold)

lemma apply_transps_append [simp]:
  apply_transps (xs @ ys) = apply_transps xs ∘ apply_transps ys
  by (induction xs) auto

lemma permutation_apply_transps [simp, intro]: permutation (apply_transps xs)
proof (induction xs)
  case (Cons x xs)
  thus ?case
    unfolding apply_transps_Cons by (intro permutation_compose permutation_swap_id)
qed auto

```

```

lemma permutes_apply_transps:
  assumes  $\forall (a,b) \in \text{set } xs. a \in A \wedge b \in A$ 
  shows  $\text{apply\_transps } xs \text{ permutes } A$ 
  using assms
proof (induction xs)
  case (Cons x xs)
  from Cons.prem1 show ?case
    unfolding apply_transps_Cons
    by (intro permutes_compose permutes_swap_id Cons) auto
qed (auto simp: permutes_id)

lemma permutes_induct [consumes 2, case_names id swap]:
  assumes  $p \text{ permutes } S \text{ finite } S$ 
  assumes  $P \text{ id}$ 
  assumes  $\bigwedge a b p. a \in S \implies b \in S \implies a \neq b \implies P p \implies p \text{ permutes } S$ 
     $\implies P (\text{Transposition.transpose } a \ b \circ p)$ 
  shows  $P p$ 
  using assms(2,1,4)
proof (induct S arbitrary: p rule: finite_induct)
  case empty
  then show ?case using assms by (auto simp: id_def)
next
  case (insert x F p)
  let ?r =  $\text{Transposition.transpose } x \ (p \ x) \circ p$ 
  let ?q =  $\text{Transposition.transpose } x \ (p \ x) \circ ?r$ 
  have  $qp: ?q = p$ 
    by (simp add: o_assoc)
  have ?r permutes F
    using permutes_insert_lemma[OF insert.prem1] .
  have  $P \ ?r$ 
    by (rule insert(3)[OF  $\langle ?r \text{ permutes } F \rangle$ , rule insert(5)]) (auto intro: permutes_subset)
  show ?case
  proof (cases  $x = p \ x$ )
    case False
    have  $p \ x \in F$ 
      using permutes_in_image[OF  $\langle p \text{ permutes } \_ \rangle$ , of x] False by auto
    have  $P \ ?q$ 
      by (rule insert(5))
      (use  $\langle P \ ?r \rangle \langle p \ x \in F \rangle \langle ?r \text{ permutes } F \rangle$  False in  $\langle \text{auto simp: o\_def intro: permutes\_subset} \rangle$ )
    thus  $P \ p$ 
      by (simp add: qp)
  qed (use  $\langle P \ ?r \rangle$  in simp)
qed

lemma permutes_rev_induct [consumes 2, case_names id swap]:

```

```

assumes finite S p permutes S
assumes P id
assumes  $\bigwedge a\ b\ p. a \in S \implies b \in S \implies a \neq b \implies P\ p \implies p\ \text{permutes}\ S$ 
            $\implies P\ (p \circ \text{Transposition.transpose}\ a\ b)$ 
shows P p
proof -
  have inv_into UNIV p permutes S
    using assms by (intro permutes_inv)
  from this and assms(1,2) show ?thesis
proof (induction inv_into UNIV p arbitrary: p rule: permutes_induct)
  case id
    hence p = id
    by (metis inv_id permutes_inv_inv)
    thus ?case using  $\langle P\ id \rangle$  by (auto simp: id_def)
  next
    case (swap a b p^)
    have p = Transposition.transpose a b  $\circ$  (Transposition.transpose a b  $\circ$  p)
      by (simp add: o_assoc)
    also have  $\dots = \text{Transposition.transpose}\ a\ b \circ \text{inv\_into}\ UNIV\ p'$ 
      by (subst swap.hyps) auto
    also have Transposition.transpose a b = inv_into UNIV (Transposition.transpose
a b)
      by (simp add: inv_swap_id)
    also have  $\dots \circ \text{inv\_into}\ UNIV\ p' = \text{inv\_into}\ UNIV\ (p' \circ \text{Transposition.transpose}$ 
a b)
      using swap  $\langle \text{finite}\ S \rangle$ 
      by (intro permutation_inverse_compose [symmetric] permutation_swap_id
permutation_inverse)
      (auto simp: permutation_permutes)
    finally have p = inv (p'  $\circ$  Transposition.transpose a b) .
    moreover have p'  $\circ$  Transposition.transpose a b permutes S
      by (intro permutes_compose permutes_swap_id swap)
    ultimately have  $*$ : P (p'  $\circ$  Transposition.transpose a b)
      by (rule swap(4))
    have P (p'  $\circ$  Transposition.transpose a b  $\circ$  Transposition.transpose a b)
      by (rule assms; intro * swap permutes_compose permutes_swap_id)
    also have p'  $\circ$  Transposition.transpose a b  $\circ$  Transposition.transpose a b = p'
      by (simp flip: o_assoc)
    finally show ?case .
  qed
qed

lemma map_permutation_apply_transps:
  assumes f: inj_on f A and set ts  $\subseteq A \times A$ 
  shows map_permutation A f (apply_transps ts) = apply_transps (map (map_prod
f f) ts)
    using assms(2)
proof (induction ts)
  case (Cons t ts)

```



```

obtain  $a\ b$  where  $[simp]: t = (a, b)$ 
  by  $(cases\ t)$ 
have  $map\_permutation\ A\ f\ (apply\_transps\ (t\ \# \ ts)) =$ 
   $map\_permutation\ A\ f\ (Transposition.transpose\ a\ b \circ apply\_transps\ ts)$ 
  by  $simp$ 
also have  $\dots = map\_permutation\ A\ f\ (Transposition.transpose\ a\ b) \circ$ 
   $map\_permutation\ A\ f\ (apply\_transps\ ts)$ 
  by  $(subst\ map\_permutation\_compose')$ 
   $(use\ f\ Cons.prem\ in\ \langle auto\ intro!: permutes\_apply\_transps \rangle)$ 
also have  $map\_permutation\ A\ f\ (Transposition.transpose\ a\ b) =$ 
   $Transposition.transpose\ (f\ a)\ (f\ b)$ 
  by  $(intro\ map\_permutation\_transpose\ f)\ (use\ Cons.prem\ in\ auto)$ 
also have  $map\_permutation\ A\ f\ (apply\_transps\ ts) = apply\_transps\ (map$ 
 $(map\_prod\ f\ f)\ ts)$ 
  by  $(intro\ Cons.IH)\ (use\ Cons.prem\ in\ auto)$ 
also have  $Transposition.transpose\ (f\ a)\ (f\ b) \circ apply\_transps\ (map\ (map\_prod$ 
 $f\ f)\ ts) =$ 
   $apply\_transps\ (map\ (map\_prod\ f\ f)\ (t\ \# \ ts))$ 
  by  $simp$ 
finally show  $?case\ .$ 
qed  $(use\ f\ in\ \langle auto\ simp: map\_permutation\_id' \rangle)$ 

```

```

lemma  $permutes\_from\_transpositions$ :
  assumes  $p\ permutes\ A\ finite\ A$ 
  shows  $\exists xs. (\forall (a,b) \in set\ xs. a \neq b \wedge a \in A \wedge b \in A) \wedge apply\_transps\ xs = p$ 
  using  $assms$ 
proof  $(induction\ rule: permutes\_induct)$ 
  case  $id$ 
  thus  $?case$  by  $(intro\ exI[of\ \_\ \_\])\ auto$ 
next
  case  $(swap\ a\ b\ p)$ 
  from  $swap.IH$  obtain  $xs$  where
     $xs: (\forall (a,b) \in set\ xs. a \neq b \wedge a \in A \wedge b \in A) \wedge apply\_transps\ xs = p$ 
  by  $blast$ 
  thus  $?case$ 
    using  $swap.hyps$  by  $(intro\ exI[of\ \_\ (a,b)\ \# \ xs])\ auto$ 
qed

```

### 3.18 More on the sign of permutations

```

lemma  $evenperm\_apply\_transps\_iff$ :
  assumes  $\forall (a,b) \in set\ xs. a \neq b$ 
  shows  $evenperm\ (apply\_transps\ xs) \longleftrightarrow even\ (length\ xs)$ 
  using  $assms$ 
  by  $(induction\ xs)$ 
   $(simp\_all\ add: case\_prod\_unfold\ evenperm\_comp\ permutation\_swap\_id\ evenperm\_swap)$ 

```

```

lemma evenperm_map_permutation:
  assumes  $f$ : inj_on  $f$   $A$  and  $p$  permutes  $A$  finite  $A$ 
  shows evenperm (map_permutation  $A$   $f$   $p$ )  $\longleftrightarrow$  evenperm  $p$ 
proof -
  note [simp] = inj_on_eq_iff[OF  $f$ ]
  obtain  $ts$  where  $ts$ :  $\forall (a, b) \in set\ ts. a \neq b \wedge a \in A \wedge b \in A$  apply_transps  $ts = p$ 
  using permutes_from_transpositions[OF assms(2,3)] by blast
  have evenperm  $p \longleftrightarrow$  even (length  $ts$ )
  by (subst  $ts(2)$  [symmetric], subst evenperm_apply_transps_iff) (use  $ts(1)$  in auto)
  also have  $\dots \longleftrightarrow$  even (length (map (map_prod  $f$   $f$ )  $ts$ ))
  by simp
  also have  $\dots \longleftrightarrow$  evenperm (apply_transps (map (map_prod  $f$   $f$ )  $ts$ ))
  by (subst evenperm_apply_transps_iff) (use  $ts(1)$  in auto)
  also have apply_transps (map (map_prod  $f$   $f$ )  $ts$ ) = map_permutation  $A$   $f$   $p$ 
  unfolding  $ts(2)$  [symmetric]
  by (rule map_permutation_apply_transps [symmetric]) (use  $f$   $ts(1)$  in auto)
  finally show ?thesis ..
qed

```

```

lemma sign_map_permutation:
  assumes inj_on  $f$   $A$   $p$  permutes  $A$  finite  $A$ 
  shows sign (map_permutation  $A$   $f$   $p$ ) = sign  $p$ 
  unfolding sign_def by (subst evenperm_map_permutation) (use assms in auto)

```

Sometimes it can be useful to consider the sign of a function that is not a permutation in the Isabelle/HOL sense, but its restriction to some finite subset is.

```

definition sign_on :: 'a set  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'a)  $\Rightarrow$  int
  where sign_on  $A$   $f$  = sign (restrict_id  $f$   $A$ )

```

```

lemma sign_on_cong [cong]:
  assumes  $A = B \wedge x. x \in A \implies f\ x = g\ x$ 
  shows sign_on  $A$   $f$  = sign_on  $B$   $g$ 
  unfolding sign_on_def using assms
  by (intro arg_cong[of _ _ sign] restrict_id_cong)

```

```

lemma sign_on_permutes:
  assumes  $f$  permutes  $A$   $A \subseteq B$ 
  shows sign_on  $B$   $f$  = sign  $f$ 
proof -
  have  $f$ :  $f$  permutes  $B$ 
  using assms permutes_subset by blast
  have sign_on  $B$   $f$  = sign (restrict_id  $f$   $B$ )
  by (simp add: sign_on_def)
  also have restrict_id  $f$   $B$  =  $f$ 
  using  $f$  by (auto simp: fun_eq_iff permutes_not_in restrict_id_def)
  finally show ?thesis .

```

qed

**lemma** *sign\_on\_id* [simp]: *sign\_on A id = 1*  
**by** (*subst sign\_on\_permutes[of \_ A]*) *auto*

**lemma** *sign\_on\_ident* [simp]: *sign\_on A (λx. x) = 1*  
**using** *sign\_on\_id[of A]* **unfolding** *id\_def* **by** *simp*

**lemma** *sign\_on\_transpose*:  
**assumes** *a ∈ A b ∈ A a ≠ b*  
**shows** *sign\_on A (Transposition.transpose a b) = -1*  
**by** (*subst sign\_on\_permutes[of \_ A]*)  
*(use assms in ⟨auto simp: permutes\_swap\_id sign\_swap\_id⟩)*

**lemma** *sign\_on\_compose*:  
**assumes** *bij\_betw f A A bij\_betw g A A finite A*  
**shows** *sign\_on A (f ∘ g) = sign\_on A f \* sign\_on A g*  
**proof** –  
**define** *restr* **where** *restr = (λf. restrict\_id f A)*  
**have** *sign\_on A (f ∘ g) = sign (restr (f ∘ g))*  
**by** (*simp add: sign\_on\_def restr\_def*)  
**also have** *restr (f ∘ g) = restr f ∘ restr g*  
**using** *assms(2)* **by** (*auto simp: restr\_def fun\_eq\_iff bij\_betw\_def restrict\_id\_def*)  
**also have** *sign ... = sign (restr f) \* sign (restr g)* **unfolding** *restr\_def*  
**by** (*rule sign\_compose*) (*auto intro!: permutes\_imp\_permutation[of A] permutes\_restrict\_id assms*)  
**also have** *... = sign\_on A f \* sign\_on A g*  
**by** (*simp add: sign\_on\_def restr\_def*)  
**finally show** *?thesis* .  
qed

### 3.19 Transpositions of adjacent elements

We have shown above that every permutation can be written as a product of transpositions. We will now furthermore show that any transposition of successive natural numbers  $\{m, \dots, n\}$  can be written as a product of transpositions of *adjacent* elements, i.e. transpositions of the form  $i \leftrightarrow i+1$ .

**function** *adj\_transp\_seq* :: *nat ⇒ nat ⇒ nat list* **where**  
*adj\_transp\_seq a b =*  
*(if a ≥ b then []*  
*else if b = a + 1 then [a]*  
*else a # adj\_transp\_seq (a+1) b @ [a])*  
**by** *auto*  
**termination by** (*relation measure (λ(a,b). b - a)*) *auto*

**lemmas** [*simp del*] = *adj\_transp\_seq.simps*

**lemma** *length\_adj\_transp\_seq*:

$a < b \implies \text{length } (\text{adj\_transp\_seq } a \ b) = 2 * (b - a) - 1$   
**by** (*induction*  $a \ b$  *rule*:  $\text{adj\_transp\_seq.induct}$ ;  $\text{subst adj\_transp\_seq.simps}$ ) *auto*

**definition**  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps} :: \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat}$   
**where**  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps } xs = \text{foldl } (\circ) \text{ id } (\text{map } (\lambda x. \text{Transposition.transpose } x \ (x+1)) \ xs)$

**lemma**  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps\_aux}$ :  
 $f \circ \text{foldl } (\circ) \ g \ (\text{map } (\lambda x. \text{Transposition.transpose } x \ (\text{Suc } x)) \ xs) =$   
 $\text{foldl } (\circ) \ (f \circ g) \ (\text{map } (\lambda x. \text{Transposition.transpose } x \ (\text{Suc } x)) \ xs)$   
**by** (*induction*  $xs$  *arbitrary*:  $f \ g$ ) (*auto simp*:  $\text{o\_assoc}$ )

**lemma**  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps\_Nil}$  [*simp*]:  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps } [] = \text{id}$   
**and**  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps\_Cons}$  [*simp*]:  
 $\text{apply\_adj\_transps } (x \# \ xs) = \text{Transposition.transpose } x \ (x+1) \circ \text{apply\_adj\_transps } xs$   
**and**  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps\_snoc}$  [*simp*]:  
 $\text{apply\_adj\_transps } (xs \ @ \ [x]) = \text{apply\_adj\_transps } xs \circ \text{Transposition.transpose } x \ (x+1)$   
**by** (*simp\_all add*:  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps\_def apply\_adj\_transps\_aux}$ )

**lemma**  $\text{adj\_transp\_seq\_correct}$ :  
**assumes**  $a < b$   
**shows**  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps } (\text{adj\_transp\_seq } a \ b) = \text{Transposition.transpose } a \ b$   
**using**  $\text{assms}$   
**proof** (*induction*  $a \ b$  *rule*:  $\text{adj\_transp\_seq.induct}$ )  
**case** ( $1 \ a \ b$ )  
**show** ?*case*  
**proof** (*cases*  $b = a + 1$ )  
**case** *True*  
**thus** ?*thesis*  
**by** ( $\text{subst adj\_transp\_seq.simps}$ ) (*auto simp*:  $\text{o\_def Transposition.transpose\_def apply\_adj\_transps\_def}$ )  
**next**  
**case** *False*  
**hence**  $\text{apply\_adj\_transps } (\text{adj\_transp\_seq } a \ b) =$   
 $\text{Transposition.transpose } a \ (\text{Suc } a) \circ \text{Transposition.transpose } (\text{Suc } a) \ b \circ$   
 $\text{Transposition.transpose } a \ (\text{Suc } a)$   
**using**  $1$  **by** ( $\text{subst adj\_transp\_seq.simps}$ )  
 $(\text{simp add: o\_assoc swap\_id\_common swap\_id\_common' id\_def o\_def})$   
**also have**  $\dots = \text{Transposition.transpose } a \ b$   
**using** *False*  $1$  **by** (*simp add*:  $\text{Transposition.transpose\_def fun\_eq\_iff}$ )  
**finally show** ?*thesis* .  
**qed**  
**qed**

**lemma**  $\text{permutation\_apply\_adj\_transps}$ :  $\text{permutation } (\text{apply\_adj\_transps } xs)$

```

proof (induction xs)
  case (Cons x xs)
  have permutation (Transposition.transpose x (Suc x) ∘ apply_adj_transps xs)
    by (intro permutation_compose permutation_swap_id Cons)
  thus ?case by (simp add: o_def)
qed auto

lemma permutes_apply_adj_transps:
  assumes  $\forall x \in \text{set } xs. x \in A \wedge \text{Suc } x \in A$ 
  shows apply_adj_transps xs permutes A
  using assms
  by (induction xs) (auto intro!: permutes_compose permutes_swap_id permutes_id)

lemma set_adj_transp_seq:
   $a < b \implies \text{set } (\text{adj\_transp\_seq } a \ b) = \{a..<b\}$ 
  by (induction a b rule: adj_transp_seq.induct, subst adj_transp_seq.simps) auto

```

### 3.20 Transferring properties of permutations along bijections

```

locale permutes_bij =
  fixes p :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a and A :: 'a set and B :: 'b set
  fixes f :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b and f' :: 'b  $\Rightarrow$  'a
  fixes p' :: 'b  $\Rightarrow$  'b
  defines p'  $\equiv (\lambda x. \text{if } x \in B \text{ then } f \ (p \ (f' \ x)) \text{ else } x)$ 
  assumes permutes_p: p permutes A
  assumes bij_f: bij_betw f A B
  assumes f'_f:  $x \in A \implies f' \ (f \ x) = x$ 
begin

lemma bij_f': bij_betw f' B A
  using bij_f f'_f by (auto simp: bij_betw_def) (auto simp: inj_on_def image_image)

lemma f_f':  $x \in B \implies f \ (f' \ x) = x$ 
  using f'_f bij_f by (auto simp: bij_betw_def)

lemma f_in_B:  $x \in A \implies f \ x \in B$ 
  using bij_f by (auto simp: bij_betw_def)

lemma f'_in_A:  $x \in B \implies f' \ x \in A$ 
  using bij_f' by (auto simp: bij_betw_def)

lemma permutes_p': p' permutes B
proof -
  have p':  $p' \ x = x$  if  $x \notin B$  for x
    using that by (simp add: p'_def)
  have bij_p: bij_betw p A A
    using permutes_p by (simp add: permutes_imp_bij)
  have bij_betw (f ∘ p ∘ f') B B

```

```

    by (rule bij_betw_trans bij_f bij_f' bij_p)+
  also have ?this  $\longleftrightarrow$  bij_betw p' B B
    by (intro bij_betw_cong) (auto simp: p'_def)
  finally show ?thesis
    using p' by (rule bij_imp_permutes)
qed

lemma f_eq_iff [simp]:  $f\ x = f\ y \longleftrightarrow x = y$  if  $x \in A\ y \in A$  for  $x\ y$ 
  using that bij_f by (auto simp: bij_betw_def inj_on_def)

lemma apply_transps_map_f_aux:
  assumes  $\forall (a,b) \in \text{set } xs. a \in A \wedge b \in A\ y \in B$ 
  shows  $\text{apply\_transps } (\text{map } (\text{map\_prod } f\ f) \ xs) \ y = f\ (\text{apply\_transps } xs\ (f'\ y))$ 
  using assms
proof (induction xs arbitrary: y)
  case Nil
  thus ?case by (auto simp: f_f')
next
  case (Cons x xs y)
  from Cons.prem1 have apply_transps xs permutes A
    by (intro permutes_apply_transps) auto
  hence [simp]:  $\text{apply\_transps } xs\ z \in A \longleftrightarrow z \in A$  for  $z$ 
    by (simp add: permutes_in_image)
  from Cons show ?case
    by (auto simp: Transposition.transpose_def f_f' f'_f case_prod_unfold f'_in_A)
qed

lemma apply_transps_map_f:
  assumes  $\forall (a,b) \in \text{set } xs. a \in A \wedge b \in A$ 
  shows  $\text{apply\_transps } (\text{map } (\text{map\_prod } f\ f) \ xs) =$ 
     $(\lambda y. \text{if } y \in B \text{ then } f\ (\text{apply\_transps } xs\ (f'\ y)) \text{ else } y)$ 
proof
  fix y
  show  $\text{apply\_transps } (\text{map } (\text{map\_prod } f\ f) \ xs) \ y =$ 
     $(\text{if } y \in B \text{ then } f\ (\text{apply\_transps } xs\ (f'\ y)) \text{ else } y)$ 
  proof (cases y  $\in B$ )
    case True
    thus ?thesis
      using apply_transps_map_f_aux[OF assms] by simp
  next
    case False
    have  $\text{apply\_transps } (\text{map } (\text{map\_prod } f\ f) \ xs) \text{ permutes } B$ 
      using assms by (intro permutes_apply_transps) (auto simp: case_prod_unfold
f_in_B)
    with False have  $\text{apply\_transps } (\text{map } (\text{map\_prod } f\ f) \ xs) \ y = y$ 
      by (intro permutes_not_in)
    with False show ?thesis
      by simp
  qed
qed

```

qed

end

**locale** *permutes\_bij\_finite* = *permutes\_bij* +  
 **assumes** *finite\_A*: *finite A*  
**begin**

**lemma** *evenperm\_p'\_iff*: *evenperm p'  $\longleftrightarrow$  evenperm p*  
**proof** –  
 **obtain** *xs* **where** *xs*:  $\forall (a,b) \in \text{set } xs. a \in A \wedge b \in A \wedge a \neq b \text{ apply\_transps } xs =$   
 *p*  
 **using** *permutes\_from\_transpositions*[*OF permutes\_p finite\_A*] **by** *blast*  
 **have** *evenperm p  $\longleftrightarrow$  evenperm (apply\_transps xs)*  
 **using** *xs* **by** *simp*  
 **also have**  $\dots \longleftrightarrow \text{even } (\text{length } xs)$   
 **using** *xs* **by** (*intro evenperm\_apply\_transps\_iff*) *auto*  
 **also have**  $\dots \longleftrightarrow \text{even } (\text{length } (\text{map } (\text{map\_prod } f f) xs))$   
 **by** *simp*  
 **also have**  $\dots \longleftrightarrow \text{evenperm } (\text{apply\_transps } (\text{map } (\text{map\_prod } f f) xs))$  **using** *xs*  
 **by** (*intro evenperm\_apply\_transps\_iff [symmetric]*) (*auto simp: case\_prod\_unfold*)  
 **also have** *apply\_transps (map (map\_prod f f) xs) = p'*  
 **using** *xs* **unfolding** *p'\_def* **by** (*subst apply\_transps\_map\_f*) *auto*  
 **finally show** *?thesis* ..  
qed

**lemma** *sign\_p'*: *sign p' = sign p*  
 **by** (*auto simp: sign\_def evenperm\_p'\_iff*)

end

### 3.21 Permuting a list

This function permutes a list by applying a permutation to the indices.

**definition** *permute\_list* ::  $(\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat}) \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list}$   
 **where** *permute\_list f xs* = *map*  $(\lambda i. xs ! (f i))$   $[0..<\text{length } xs]$

**lemma** *permute\_list\_map*:  
 **assumes** *f permutes*  $\{..<\text{length } xs\}$   
 **shows** *permute\_list f (map g xs) = map g (permute\_list f xs)*  
 **using** *permutes\_in\_image*[*OF assms*] **by** (*auto simp: permute\_list\_def*)

**lemma** *permute\_list\_nth*:  
 **assumes** *f permutes*  $\{..<\text{length } xs\}$  *i < length xs*  
 **shows** *permute\_list f xs ! i = xs ! f i*  
 **using** *permutes\_in\_image*[*OF assms(1)*] *assms(2)*  
 **by** (*simp add: permute\_list\_def*)

```

lemma permute_list_Nil [simp]: permute_list f [] = []
  by (simp add: permute_list_def)

lemma length_permute_list [simp]: length (permute_list f xs) = length xs
  by (simp add: permute_list_def)

lemma permute_list_compose:
  assumes g permutes {..length xs}
  shows permute_list (f ∘ g) xs = permute_list g (permute_list f xs)
  using assms[THEN permutes_in_image] by (auto simp add: permute_list_def)

lemma permute_list_ident [simp]: permute_list (λx. x) xs = xs
  by (simp add: permute_list_def map_nth)

lemma permute_list_id [simp]: permute_list id xs = xs
  by (simp add: id_def)

lemma mset_permute_list [simp]:
  fixes xs :: 'a list
  assumes f permutes {..length xs}
  shows mset (permute_list f xs) = mset xs
proof (rule multiset_eqI)
  fix y :: 'a
  from assms have [simp]: f x < length xs ↔ x < length xs for x
  using permutes_in_image[OF assms] by auto
  have count (mset (permute_list f xs)) y = card ((λi. xs ! f i) - ' {y} ∩ {..length
xs})
  by (simp add: permute_list_def count_image_mset atLeast0LessThan)
  also have (λi. xs ! f i) - ' {y} ∩ {..length xs} = f - ' {i. i < length xs ∧ y =
xs ! i}
  by auto
  also from assms have card ... = card {i. i < length xs ∧ y = xs ! i}
  by (intro card_vimage_inj) (auto simp: permutes_inj permutes_surj)
  also have ... = count (mset xs) y
  by (simp add: count_mset count_list_eq_length_filter length_filter_conv_card)
  finally show count (mset (permute_list f xs)) y = count (mset xs) y
  by simp
qed

lemma set_permute_list [simp]:
  assumes f permutes {..length xs}
  shows set (permute_list f xs) = set xs
  by (rule mset_eq_setD[OF mset_permute_list]) fact

lemma distinct_permute_list [simp]:
  assumes f permutes {..length xs}
  shows distinct (permute_list f xs) = distinct xs
  by (simp add: distinct_count_atmost_1 assms)

```



```

lemma permute_list_zip:
  assumes f permutes A  $A = \{.. $\text{length } xs\}$ 
  assumes [simp]:  $\text{length } xs = \text{length } ys$ 
  shows  $\text{permute\_list } f (\text{zip } xs \text{ } ys) = \text{zip } (\text{permute\_list } f \text{ } xs) (\text{permute\_list } f \text{ } ys)$ 
proof -
  from permutes_in_image[OF assms(1)] assms(2) have *:  $f \text{ } i < \text{length } ys \longleftrightarrow$ 
 $i < \text{length } ys$  for i
  by simp
  have  $\text{permute\_list } f (\text{zip } xs \text{ } ys) = \text{map } (\lambda i. \text{zip } xs \text{ } ys ! f \text{ } i) [0.. $\text{length } ys$ ]$ 
  by (simp_all add: permute_list_def zip_map_map)
  also have  $\dots = \text{map } (\lambda(x, y). (xs ! f \text{ } x, ys ! f \text{ } y)) (\text{zip } [0.. $\text{length } ys$ ] [0.. $\text{length } ys$ ])$ 
  by (intro nth_equalityI) (simp_all add: *)
  also have  $\dots = \text{zip } (\text{permute\_list } f \text{ } xs) (\text{permute\_list } f \text{ } ys)$ 
  by (simp_all add: permute_list_def zip_map_map)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed$ 
```

```

lemma map_of_permute:
  assumes  $\sigma \text{ permutes } \text{fst ' set } xs$ 
  shows  $\text{map\_of } xs \circ \sigma = \text{map\_of } (\text{map } (\lambda(x,y). (\text{inv } \sigma \text{ } x, y)) \text{ } xs)$ 
   $(\text{is } \_ = \text{map\_of } (\text{map } ?f \text{ } \_))$ 
proof
  from assms have inj  $\sigma$  surj  $\sigma$ 
  by (simp_all add: permutes_inj permutes_surj)
  then show  $(\text{map\_of } xs \circ \sigma) \text{ } x = \text{map\_of } (\text{map } ?f \text{ } xs) \text{ } x$  for x
  by (induct xs) (auto simp: inv_f_f surj_f_inv_f)
qed

```

```

lemma list_all2_permute_list_iff:
   $\langle \text{list\_all2 } P (\text{permute\_list } p \text{ } xs) (\text{permute\_list } p \text{ } ys) \longleftrightarrow \text{list\_all2 } P \text{ } xs \text{ } ys \rangle$ 
  if  $\langle p \text{ permutes } \{.. $\text{length } xs\} \rangle$ 
  using that by (auto simp add: list_all2_iff simp flip: permute_list_zip)$ 
```

### 3.22 More lemmas about permutations

```

lemma permutes_in_funpow_image:
  assumes  $f \text{ permutes } S \text{ } x \in S$ 
  shows  $(f \text{ } \sim^n) \text{ } x \in S$ 
  using assms by (induction n) (auto simp: permutes_in_image)

```

```

lemma permutation_self:
  assumes  $\langle \text{permutation } p \rangle$ 
  obtains n where  $\langle n > 0 \rangle \langle (p \text{ } \sim^n) \text{ } x = x \rangle$ 
proof (cases  $\langle p \text{ } x = x \rangle$ )
  case True
  with that [of 1] show thesis by simp
next
  case False

```

```

from ⟨permutation  $p$ ⟩ have ⟨inj  $p$ ⟩
  by (intro permutation_bijective bij_is_inj)
moreover from ⟨ $p\ x \neq x$ ⟩ have ⟨ $(p \rightsquigarrow \text{Suc } n)\ x \neq (p \rightsquigarrow n)\ x$ ⟩ for  $n$ 
proof (induction  $n$  arbitrary:  $x$ )
  case 0 then show ?case by simp
next
  case (Suc  $n$ )
  have  $p\ (p\ x) \neq p\ x$ 
  proof (rule notI)
    assume  $p\ (p\ x) = p\ x$ 
    then show False using ⟨ $p\ x \neq x$ ⟩ ⟨inj  $p$ ⟩ by (simp add: inj_eq)
  qed
  have  $(p \rightsquigarrow \text{Suc } (\text{Suc } n))\ x = (p \rightsquigarrow \text{Suc } n)\ (p\ x)$ 
    by (simp add: funpow_swap1)
  also have  $\dots \neq (p \rightsquigarrow n)\ (p\ x)$ 
    by (rule Suc) fact
  also have  $(p \rightsquigarrow n)\ (p\ x) = (p \rightsquigarrow \text{Suc } n)\ x$ 
    by (simp add: funpow_swap1)
  finally show ?case by simp
qed
then have  $\{y. \exists n. y = (p \rightsquigarrow n)\ x\} \subseteq \{x. p\ x \neq x\}$ 
  by auto
then have finite  $\{y. \exists n. y = (p \rightsquigarrow n)\ x\}$ 
  using permutation_finite_support[OF assms] by (rule finite_subset)
ultimately obtain  $n$  where  $\langle n > 0 \rangle$  ⟨ $(p \rightsquigarrow n)\ x = x$ ⟩
  by (rule funpow_inj_finite)
with that [of  $n$ ] show thesis by blast
qed

```

The following few lemmas were contributed by Lukas Bulwahn.

```

lemma count_image_mset_eq_card_vimage:
  assumes finite  $A$ 
  shows  $\text{count } (\text{image\_mset } f\ (\text{mset\_set } A))\ b = \text{card } \{a \in A. f\ a = b\}$ 
  using assms
proof (induct  $A$ )
  case empty
  show ?case by simp
next
  case (insert  $x\ F$ )
  show ?case
  proof (cases  $f\ x = b$ )
    case True
    with insert.hyps
    have  $\text{count } (\text{image\_mset } f\ (\text{mset\_set } (\text{insert } x\ F)))\ b = \text{Suc } (\text{card } \{a \in F. f\ a = f\ x\})$ 
    by auto
    also from insert.hyps(1,2) have  $\dots = \text{card } (\text{insert } x\ \{a \in F. f\ a = f\ x\})$ 
    by simp
    also from ⟨ $f\ x = b$ ⟩ have  $\text{card } (\text{insert } x\ \{a \in F. f\ a = f\ x\}) = \text{card } \{a \in \text{insert } x\ F. f\ a = b\}$ 

```

```

x F. f a = b}
  by (auto intro: arg_cong[where f=card])
  finally show ?thesis
    using insert by auto
next
case False
then have {a ∈ F. f a = b} = {a ∈ insert x F. f a = b}
  by auto
with insert False show ?thesis
  by simp
qed
qed

— Prove image_mset_eq_implies_permutes ...
lemma image_mset_eq_implies_permutes:
  fixes f :: 'a ⇒ 'b
  assumes finite A
    and mset_eq: image_mset f (mset_set A) = image_mset f' (mset_set A)
  obtains p where p permutes A and ∀ x ∈ A. f x = f' (p x)
proof -
  from ⟨finite A⟩ have [simp]: finite {a ∈ A. f a = (b::'b)} for f b by auto
  have f' ` A = f' ` A
  proof -
    from ⟨finite A⟩ have f' ` A = f' ` (set_mset (mset_set A))
      by simp
    also have ... = f' ` set_mset (mset_set A)
      by (metis mset_eq multiset.set_map)
    also from ⟨finite A⟩ have ... = f' ` A
      by simp
    finally show ?thesis .
  qed
  have ∀ b ∈ (f' ` A). ∃ p. bij_betw p {a ∈ A. f a = b} {a ∈ A. f' a = b}
  proof
    fix b
    from mset_eq have count (image_mset f (mset_set A)) b = count (image_mset
f' (mset_set A)) b
      by simp
    with ⟨finite A⟩ have card {a ∈ A. f a = b} = card {a ∈ A. f' a = b}
      by (simp add: count_image_mset_eq_card_vimage)
    then show ∃ p. bij_betw p {a ∈ A. f a = b} {a ∈ A. f' a = b}
      by (intro finite_same_card_bij) simp_all
  qed
  then have ∃ p. ∀ b ∈ f' ` A. bij_betw (p b) {a ∈ A. f a = b} {a ∈ A. f' a = b}
    by (rule bchoice)
  then obtain p where p: ∀ b ∈ f' ` A. bij_betw (p b) {a ∈ A. f a = b} {a ∈ A. f'
a = b} ..
  define p' where p' = (λ a. if a ∈ A then p (f a) a else a)
  have p' permutes A
  proof (rule bij_imp_permutes)

```

```

have disjoint_family_on (λi. {a ∈ A. f' a = i}) (f ' A)
  by (auto simp: disjoint_family_on_def)
moreover
have bij_betw (λa. p (f a) a) {a ∈ A. f a = b} {a ∈ A. f' a = b} if b ∈ f ' A
for b
  using p that by (subst bij_betw_cong[where g=p b]) auto
ultimately
have bij_betw (λa. p (f a) a) (⋃ b∈f ' A. {a ∈ A. f a = b}) (⋃ b∈f ' A. {a ∈
A. f' a = b})
  by (rule bij_betw_UNION_disjoint)
moreover have (⋃ b∈f ' A. {a ∈ A. f a = b}) = A
  by auto
moreover from ⟨f ' A = f' ' A⟩ have (⋃ b∈f ' A. {a ∈ A. f' a = b}) = A
  by auto
ultimately show bij_betw p' A A
  unfolding p'_def by (subst bij_betw_cong[where g=(λa. p (f a) a)]) auto
next
show ⋀x. x ∉ A ⇒ p' x = x
  by (simp add: p'_def)
qed
moreover from p have ∀ x∈A. f x = f' (p' x)
  unfolding p'_def using bij_betwE by fastforce
ultimately show ?thesis ..
qed

```

— ... and derive the existing property:

```

lemma mset_eq_permutation:
  fixes xs ys :: 'a list
  assumes mset_eq: mset xs = mset ys
  obtains p where p permutes {..

```

```

lemma permutes_natset_le:

```

```

fixes S :: 'a::wellorder set
assumes p permutes S
  and  $\forall i \in S. p\ i \leq i$ 
shows p = id
proof -
  have p n = n for n
    using assms
  proof (induct n arbitrary: S rule: less_induct)
    case (less n)
    show ?case
    proof (cases n  $\in$  S)
      case False
      with less(2) show ?thesis
        unfolding permutes_def by metis
    next
      case True
      with less(3) have p n < n  $\vee$  p n = n
        by auto
      then show ?thesis
      proof
        assume p n < n
        with less have p (p n) = p n
          by metis
        with permutes_inj[OF less(2)] have p n = n
          unfolding inj_def by blast
        with  $\langle p\ n < n \rangle$  have False
          by simp
        then show ?thesis ..
      qed
    qed
  qed
  then show ?thesis by (auto simp: fun_eq_iff)
qed

lemma permutes_natset_ge:
fixes S :: 'a::wellorder set
assumes p: p permutes S
  and le:  $\forall i \in S. p\ i \geq i$ 
shows p = id
proof -
  have i  $\geq$  inv p i if i  $\in$  S for i
  proof -
    from that permutes_in_image[OF permutes_inv[OF p]] have inv p i  $\in$  S
      by simp
    with le have p (inv p i)  $\geq$  inv p i
      by blast
    with permutes_inverses[OF p] show ?thesis
      by simp
  qed

```

```

then have  $\forall i \in S. \text{inv } p \ i \leq i$ 
  by blast
from permutes_natset_le[OF permutes_inv[OF p] this] have  $\text{inv } p = \text{inv id}$ 
  by simp
then show ?thesis
  using p permutes_inv_inv by fastforce
qed

lemma image_inverse_permutations:  $\{\text{inv } p \mid p. p \text{ permutes } S\} = \{p. p \text{ permutes } S\}$ 
  using permutes_inv permutes_inv_inv by force

lemma image_compose_permutations_left:
  assumes q permutes S
  shows  $\{q \circ p \mid p. p \text{ permutes } S\} = \{p. p \text{ permutes } S\}$ 
proof -
  have  $\bigwedge p. p \text{ permutes } S \implies q \circ p \text{ permutes } S$ 
    by (simp add: assms permutes_compose)
  moreover have  $\bigwedge x. x \text{ permutes } S \implies \exists p. x = q \circ p \wedge p \text{ permutes } S$ 
    by (metis assms id_comp o_assoc permutes_compose permutes_inv permutes_inv_o(1))
  ultimately show ?thesis
    by auto
qed

lemma image_compose_permutations_right:
  assumes q permutes S
  shows  $\{p \circ q \mid p. p \text{ permutes } S\} = \{p. p \text{ permutes } S\}$ 
  by (metis (no_types, opaque_lifting) assms comp_id fun.map_comp permutes_compose permutes_inv permutes_inv_o(2))

lemma permutes_in_seg:  $p \text{ permutes } \{1 .. n\} \implies i \in \{1 .. n\} \implies 1 \leq p \ i \wedge p \ i \leq n$ 
  by (simp add: permutes_def) metis

lemma sum_permutations_inverse:  $\text{sum } f \ \{p. p \text{ permutes } S\} = \text{sum } (\lambda p. f(\text{inv } p)) \ \{p. p \text{ permutes } S\}$ 
  (is ?lhs = ?rhs)
proof -
  let ?S =  $\{p. p \text{ permutes } S\}$ 
  have *: inj_on inv ?S
  proof (auto simp add: inj_on_def)
    fix q r
    assume q: q permutes S
    and r: r permutes S
    and qr: inv q = inv r
    then have  $\text{inv } (\text{inv } q) = \text{inv } (\text{inv } r)$ 
      by simp
    with permutes_inv_inv[OF q] permutes_inv_inv[OF r] show q = r
      by metis
  qed

```

```

qed
have **: inv ' ?S = ?S
  using image_inverse_permutations by blast
have ***: ?rhs = sum (f ∘ inv) ?S
  by (simp add: o_def)
from sum.reindex[OF *, of f] show ?thesis
  by (simp only: ** ***)
qed

lemma setum_permutations_compose_left:
  assumes q: q permutes S
  shows sum f {p. p permutes S} = sum (λp. f(q ∘ p)) {p. p permutes S}
  (is ?lhs = ?rhs)
proof -
  let ?S = {p. p permutes S}
  have *: ?rhs = sum (f ∘ ((∘) q)) ?S
    by (simp add: o_def)
  have **: inj_on ((∘) q) ?S
  proof (auto simp add: inj_on_def)
    fix p r
    assume p permutes S
    and r: r permutes S
    and rp: q ∘ p = q ∘ r
    then have inv q ∘ q ∘ p = inv q ∘ q ∘ r
      by (simp add: comp_assoc)
    with permutes_inj[OF q, unfolded inj_iff] show p = r
      by simp
  qed
  have ((∘) q) ' ?S = ?S
    using image_compose_permutations_left[OF q] by auto
  with * sum.reindex[OF **, of f] show ?thesis
    by (simp only:)
qed

lemma sum_permutations_compose_right:
  assumes q: q permutes S
  shows sum f {p. p permutes S} = sum (λp. f(p ∘ q)) {p. p permutes S}
  (is ?lhs = ?rhs)
proof -
  let ?S = {p. p permutes S}
  have *: ?rhs = sum (f ∘ (λp. p ∘ q)) ?S
    by (simp add: o_def)
  have **: inj_on (λp. p ∘ q) ?S
  proof (auto simp add: inj_on_def)
    fix p r
    assume p permutes S
    and r: r permutes S
    and rp: p ∘ q = r ∘ q
    then have p ∘ (q ∘ inv q) = r ∘ (q ∘ inv q)

```

```

    by (simp add: o_assoc)
  with permutes_surj[OF q, unfolded surj_iff] show p = r
    by simp
qed
from image_compose_permutations_right[OF q] have (λp. p ∘ q) ‘ ?S = ?S
  by auto
with * sum.reindex[OF **, of f] show ?thesis
  by (simp only:)
qed

```

```

lemma inv_inj_on_permutes:
  ⟨inj_on inv {p. p permutes S}⟩
proof (intro inj_onI, unfold mem_Collect_eq)
  fix p q
  assume p: p permutes S and q: q permutes S and eq: inv p = inv q
  have inv (inv p) = inv (inv q) using eq by simp
  thus p = q
    using inv_inv_eq[OF permutes_bij] p q by metis
qed

```

```

lemma permutes_pair_eq:
  ⟨{(p s, s) | s. s ∈ S} = {(s, inv p s) | s. s ∈ S}⟩ (is ⟨?L = ?R⟩) if ⟨p permutes S⟩
proof
  show ?L ⊆ ?R
  proof
    fix x assume x ∈ ?L
    then obtain s where x: x = (p s, s) and s: s ∈ S by auto
    note x
    also have (p s, s) = (p s, Hilbert_Choice.inv p (p s))
      using permutes_inj [OF that] inv_ff by auto
    also have ... ∈ ?R using s permutes_in_image[OF that] by auto
    finally show x ∈ ?R.
  qed
  show ?R ⊆ ?L
  proof
    fix x assume x ∈ ?R
    then obtain s
      where x: x = (s, Hilbert_Choice.inv p s) (is _ = (s, ?ips))
      and s: s ∈ S by auto
    note x
    also have (s, ?ips) = (p ?ips, ?ips)
      using inv_ff [OF permutes_inj [OF permutes_inv [OF that]]]
      using inv_inv_eq [OF permutes_bij [OF that]] by auto
    also have ... ∈ ?L
      using s permutes_in_image [OF permutes_inv [OF that]] by auto
    finally show x ∈ ?L.
  qed
qed

```



```

context
  fixes p and n i :: nat
  assumes p: ⟨p permutes {0.. $n$ }⟩ and i: ⟨i < n⟩
begin

lemma permutes_nat_less:
  ⟨p i < n⟩
proof -
  have ⟨?thesis  $\longleftrightarrow$  p i  $\in$  {0.. $n$ }⟩
  by simp
  also from p have ⟨p i  $\in$  {0.. $n$ }  $\longleftrightarrow$  i  $\in$  {0.. $n$ }⟩
  by (rule permutes_in_image)
  finally show ?thesis
  using i by simp
qed

lemma permutes_nat_inv_less:
  ⟨inv p i < n⟩
proof -
  from p have ⟨inv p permutes {0.. $n$ }⟩
  by (rule permutes_inv)
  then show ?thesis
  using i by (rule Permutations.permutes_nat_less)
qed

end

context comm_monoid_set
begin

lemma permutes_inv:
  ⟨F (λs. g (p s) s) S = F (λs. g s (inv p s)) S⟩ (is ⟨?l = ?r⟩)
  if ⟨p permutes S⟩
proof -
  let ?g = λ(x, y). g x y
  let ?ps = λs. (p s, s)
  let ?ips = λs. (s, inv p s)
  have inj1: inj_on ?ps S by (rule inj_onI) auto
  have inj2: inj_on ?ips S by (rule inj_onI) auto
  have ?l = F ?g (?ps ‘ S)
  using reindex [OF inj1, of ?g] by simp
  also have ?ps ‘ S = {(p s, s) | s. s  $\in$  S} by auto
  also have ... = {(s, inv p s) | s. s  $\in$  S}
  unfolding permutes_pair_eq [OF that] by simp
  also have ... = ?ips ‘ S by auto
  also have F ?g ... = ?r
  using reindex [OF inj2, of ?g] by simp
  finally show ?thesis.
qed

```

end

### 3.23 Sum over a set of permutations (could generalize to iteration)

```

lemma sum_over_permutations_insert:
  assumes fS: finite S
  and aS: a ∉ S
  shows sum f {p. p permutes (insert a S)} =
    sum (λb. sum (λq. f (transpose a b ∘ q)) {p. p permutes S}) (insert a S)
proof -
  have *: ∧f a b. (λ(b, p). f (transpose a b ∘ p)) = f ∘ (λ(b, p). transpose a b ∘ p)
  by (simp add: fun_eq_iff)
  have **: ∧P Q. {(a, b). a ∈ P ∧ b ∈ Q} = P × Q
  by blast
  show ?thesis
    unfolding * ** sum.cartesian_product permutes_insert
  proof (rule sum.reindex)
    let ?f = (λ(b, y). transpose a b ∘ y)
    let ?P = {p. p permutes S}
    {
      fix b c p q
      assume b: b ∈ insert a S
      assume c: c ∈ insert a S
      assume p: p permutes S
      assume q: q permutes S
      assume eq: transpose a b ∘ p = transpose a c ∘ q
      from p q aS have pa: p a = a and qa: q a = a
      unfolding permutes_def by metis+
      from eq have (transpose a b ∘ p) a = (transpose a c ∘ q) a
      by simp
      then have bc: b = c
      by (simp add: permutes_def pa qa o_def fun_upd_def id_def
        cong del: if_weak_cong split: if_split_asm)
      from eq[unfolded bc] have (λp. transpose a c ∘ p) (transpose a c ∘ p) =
        (λp. transpose a c ∘ p) (transpose a c ∘ q) by simp
      then have p = q
      unfolding o_assoc swap_id_idempotent by simp
      with bc have b = c ∧ p = q
      by blast
    }
    then show inj_on ?f (insert a S × ?P)
    unfolding inj_on_def by clarify metis
  qed
qed

```

### 3.24 Constructing permutations from association lists

**definition** *list\_permutes* :: ('a × 'a) list ⇒ 'a set ⇒ bool

**where** *list\_permutes* *xs* *A*  $\longleftrightarrow$   
 $set\ (map\ fst\ xs) \subseteq A \wedge$   
 $set\ (map\ snd\ xs) = set\ (map\ fst\ xs) \wedge$   
 $distinct\ (map\ fst\ xs) \wedge$   
 $distinct\ (map\ snd\ xs)$

**lemma** *list\_permutesI* [*simp*]:

**assumes**  $set\ (map\ fst\ xs) \subseteq A$   $set\ (map\ snd\ xs) = set\ (map\ fst\ xs)$   $distinct\ (map\ fst\ xs)$

**shows** *list\_permutes* *xs* *A*

**proof** –

**from** *assms*(2,3) **have**  $distinct\ (map\ snd\ xs)$

**by** (*intro* *card\_distinct*) (*simp\_all* *add*: *distinct\_card* *del*: *set\_map*)

**with** *assms* **show** *?thesis*

**by** (*simp* *add*: *list\_permutes\_def*)

**qed**

**definition** *permutation\_of\_list* :: ('a × 'a) list ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'a

**where** *permutation\_of\_list* *xs* *x* = (case *map\_of* *xs* *x* of None ⇒ *x* | Some *y* ⇒ *y*)

**lemma** *permutation\_of\_list\_Cons*:

*permutation\_of\_list* ((*x*, *y*) # *xs*) *x'* = (if *x* = *x'* then *y* else *permutation\_of\_list* *xs* *x'*)

**by** (*simp* *add*: *permutation\_of\_list\_def*)

**fun** *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list* :: ('a × 'a) list ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'a

**where**

*inverse\_permutation\_of\_list* [] *x* = *x*

| *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list* ((*y*, *x'*) # *xs*) *x* =

(if *x* = *x'* then *y* else *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list* *xs* *x*)

**declare** *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list.simps* [*simp* *del*]

**lemma** *inj\_on\_map\_of*:

**assumes**  $distinct\ (map\ snd\ xs)$

**shows** *inj\_on* (*map\_of* *xs*) (*set* (*map* *fst* *xs*))

**proof** (*rule* *inj\_onI*)

**fix** *x* *y*

**assume** *xy*:  $x \in set\ (map\ fst\ xs)$   $y \in set\ (map\ fst\ xs)$

**assume** *eq*: *map\_of* *xs* *x* = *map\_of* *xs* *y*

**from** *xy* **obtain** *x'* *y'* **where** *x'y'*: *map\_of* *xs* *x* = Some *x'* *map\_of* *xs* *y* = Some *y'*

**by** (*cases* *map\_of* *xs* *x*; *cases* *map\_of* *xs* *y*) (*simp\_all* *add*: *map\_of\_eq\_None\_iff*)

**moreover from** *x'y'* **have** \*: (*x*, *x'*) ∈ *set* *xs* (*y*, *y'*) ∈ *set* *xs*

**by** (*force* *dest*: *map\_of\_SomeD*) +

**moreover from** \* *eq* *x'y'* **have** *x'* = *y'*

by simp  
ultimately show  $x = y$   
using assms by (force simp: distinct\_map dest: inj\_onD[of \_\_ (x,x') (y,y')])  
qed

lemma inj\_on\_the:  $\text{None} \notin A \implies \text{inj\_on the } A$   
by (auto simp: inj\_on\_def option.the\_def split: option.splits)

lemma inj\_on\_map\_of':  
assumes distinct (map snd xs)  
shows inj\_on (the  $\circ$  map\_of xs) (set (map fst xs))  
by (intro comp\_inj\_on inj\_on\_map\_of assms inj\_on\_the)  
(force simp: eq\_commute[of None] map\_of\_eq\_None\_iff)

lemma image\_map\_of:  
assumes distinct (map fst xs)  
shows map\_of xs ' set (map fst xs) = Some ' set (map snd xs)  
using assms by (auto simp: rev\_image\_eqI)

lemma the\_Some\_image [simp]: the ' Some ' A = A  
by (subst image\_image) simp

lemma image\_map\_of':  
assumes distinct (map fst xs)  
shows (the  $\circ$  map\_of xs) ' set (map fst xs) = set (map snd xs)  
by (simp only: image\_comp [symmetric] image\_map\_of assms the\_Some\_image)

lemma permutation\_of\_list\_permutes [simp]:  
assumes list\_permutes xs A  
shows permutation\_of\_list xs permutes A  
(is ?f permutes \_)

proof (rule permutes\_subset[OF bij\_imp\_permutes])  
from assms show set (map fst xs)  $\subseteq$  A  
by (simp add: list\_permutes\_def)  
from assms have inj\_on (the  $\circ$  map\_of xs) (set (map fst xs)) (is ?P)  
by (intro inj\_on\_map\_of') (simp\_all add: list\_permutes\_def)  
also have ?P  $\longleftrightarrow$  inj\_on ?f (set (map fst xs))  
by (intro inj\_on\_cong)  
(auto simp: permutation\_of\_list\_def map\_of\_eq\_None\_iff split: option.splits)  
finally have bij\_betw ?f (set (map fst xs)) (?f ' set (map fst xs))  
by (rule inj\_on\_imp\_bij\_betw)  
also from assms have ?f ' set (map fst xs) = (the  $\circ$  map\_of xs) ' set (map fst xs)

by (intro image\_cong refl)  
(auto simp: permutation\_of\_list\_def map\_of\_eq\_None\_iff split: option.splits)  
also from assms have ... = set (map fst xs)  
by (subst image\_map\_of') (simp\_all add: list\_permutes\_def)  
finally show bij\_betw ?f (set (map fst xs)) (set (map fst xs)) .  
qed (force simp: permutation\_of\_list\_def dest!: map\_of\_SomeD split: option.splits)+

**lemma** *eval\_permutation\_of\_list* [simp]:  
*permutation\_of\_list [] x = x*  
*x = x'  $\implies$  permutation\_of\_list ((x',y)#xs) x = y*  
*x  $\neq$  x'  $\implies$  permutation\_of\_list ((x',y')#xs) x = permutation\_of\_list xs x*  
**by** (simp\_all add: permutation\_of\_list\_def)

**lemma** *eval\_inverse\_permutation\_of\_list* [simp]:  
*inverse\_permutation\_of\_list [] x = x*  
*x = x'  $\implies$  inverse\_permutation\_of\_list ((y,x')#xs) x = y*  
*x  $\neq$  x'  $\implies$  inverse\_permutation\_of\_list ((y',x')#xs) x = inverse\_permutation\_of\_list xs x*  
**by** (simp\_all add: inverse\_permutation\_of\_list.simps)

**lemma** *permutation\_of\_list\_id*: *x  $\notin$  set (map fst xs)  $\implies$  permutation\_of\_list xs x = x*  
**by** (induct xs) (auto simp: permutation\_of\_list\_Cons)

**lemma** *permutation\_of\_list\_unique'*:  
*distinct (map fst xs)  $\implies$  (x, y)  $\in$  set xs  $\implies$  permutation\_of\_list xs x = y*  
**by** (induct xs) (force simp: permutation\_of\_list\_Cons)+

**lemma** *permutation\_of\_list\_unique*:  
*list\_permutes xs A  $\implies$  (x, y)  $\in$  set xs  $\implies$  permutation\_of\_list xs x = y*  
**by** (intro permutation\_of\_list\_unique') (simp\_all add: list\_permutes\_def)

**lemma** *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list\_id*:  
*x  $\notin$  set (map snd xs)  $\implies$  inverse\_permutation\_of\_list xs x = x*  
**by** (induct xs) auto

**lemma** *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list\_unique'*:  
*distinct (map snd xs)  $\implies$  (x, y)  $\in$  set xs  $\implies$  inverse\_permutation\_of\_list xs y = x*  
**by** (induct xs) (force simp: inverse\_permutation\_of\_list.simps(2))+

**lemma** *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list\_unique*:  
*list\_permutes xs A  $\implies$  (x,y)  $\in$  set xs  $\implies$  inverse\_permutation\_of\_list xs y = x*  
**by** (intro inverse\_permutation\_of\_list\_unique') (simp\_all add: list\_permutes\_def)

**lemma** *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list\_correct*:  
**fixes** *A :: 'a set*  
**assumes** *list\_permutes xs A*  
**shows** *inverse\_permutation\_of\_list xs = inv (permutation\_of\_list xs)*  
**proof** (rule ext, rule sym, subst permutes\_inv\_eq)  
**from** *assms show permutation\_of\_list xs permutes A*  
**by** *simp*  
**show** *permutation\_of\_list xs (inverse\_permutation\_of\_list xs x) = x for x*  
**proof** (cases *x  $\in$  set (map snd xs)*)  
**case** *True*

```

    then obtain  $y$  where  $(y, x) \in \text{set } xs$  by auto
    with  $\text{assms}$  show ?thesis
    by (simp add: inverse_permutation_of_list_unique permutation_of_list_unique)
next
  case False
  with  $\text{assms}$  show ?thesis
  by (auto simp: list_permutes_def inverse_permutation_of_list_id permutation_of_list_id)
qed
qed
end

```

## 4 Permuted Lists

```

theory List_Permutation
imports Permutations
begin

```

Note that multisets already provide the notion of permuted list and hence this theory mostly echoes material already logically present in theory *Permutations*; it should be seldom needed.

### 4.1 An existing notion

```

abbreviation (input) perm :: 'a list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  bool (infixr '<~~>' 50)
  where 'xs <~~> ys  $\equiv$  mset xs = mset ys'

```

### 4.2 Nontrivial conclusions

```

proposition perm_swap:
  'xs[i := xs ! j, j := xs ! i] <~~> xs'
  if 'i < length xs' 'j < length xs'
  using that by (simp add: mset_swap)

```

```

proposition mset_le_perm_append: mset xs  $\subseteq\#$  mset ys  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\exists zs. xs @ zs$ 
  <~~> ys)
  by (auto simp add: mset_subset_eq_exists_conv ex_mset dest: sym)

```

```

proposition perm_set_eq: xs <~~> ys  $\implies$  set xs = set ys
  by (rule mset_eq_setD) simp

```

```

proposition perm_distinct_iff: xs <~~> ys  $\implies$  distinct xs  $\longleftrightarrow$  distinct ys
  by (rule mset_eq_imp_distinct_iff) simp

```

```

theorem eq_set_perm_remdups: set xs = set ys  $\implies$  remdups xs <~~> remdups
  ys
  by (simp add: set_eq_iff_mset_remdups_eq)

```

**proposition** *perm\_remdups\_iff\_eq\_set*:  $\text{remdups } x <\sim\sim> \text{remdups } y \longleftrightarrow \text{set } x = \text{set } y$

by (*simp add: set\_eq\_iff\_mset\_remdups\_eq*)

**theorem** *permutation\_Ex\_bij*:

assumes  $xs <\sim\sim> ys$

shows  $\exists f. \text{bij\_betw } f \{..$

**proof** –

from *assms* have  $\langle \text{mset } xs = \text{mset } ys \rangle \langle \text{length } xs = \text{length } ys \rangle$

by (*auto simp add: dest: mset\_eq\_length*)

from  $\langle \text{mset } xs = \text{mset } ys \rangle$  obtain *p* where  $\langle p \text{ permutes } \{..$

by (*rule mset\_eq\_permutation*)

then have  $\langle \text{bij\_betw } p \{..$

by (*simp add: length xs = length ys permutes\_imp\_bij*)

moreover have  $\langle \forall i < \text{length } xs. xs ! i = ys ! (p i) \rangle$

using  $\langle \text{permute\_list } p \text{ } ys = xs \rangle \langle \text{length } xs = \text{length } ys \rangle \langle p \text{ permutes } \{..$

by *auto*

ultimately show *?thesis*

by *blast*

qed

**proposition** *perm\_finite*:  $\text{finite } \{B. B <\sim\sim> A\}$

using *mset\_eq\_finite* by *auto*

### 4.3 Trivial conclusions:

**proposition** *perm\_empty\_imp*:  $[] <\sim\sim> ys \implies ys = []$

by *simp*

This more general theorem is easier to understand!

**proposition** *perm\_length*:  $xs <\sim\sim> ys \implies \text{length } xs = \text{length } ys$

by (*rule mset\_eq\_length*) *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_sym*:  $xs <\sim\sim> ys \implies ys <\sim\sim> xs$

by *simp*

We can insert the head anywhere in the list.

**proposition** *perm\_append\_Cons*:  $a \# xs @ ys <\sim\sim> xs @ a \# ys$

by *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_append\_swap*:  $xs @ ys <\sim\sim> ys @ xs$

by *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_append\_single*:  $a \# xs <\sim\sim> xs @ [a]$

by *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_rev*:  $\text{rev } xs <\sim\sim> xs$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_append1*:  $xs <\sim\sim> ys \implies l @ xs <\sim\sim> l @ ys$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_append2*:  $xs <\sim\sim> ys \implies xs @ l <\sim\sim> ys @ l$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_empty* [iff]:  $[] <\sim\sim> xs \longleftrightarrow xs = []$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_empty2* [iff]:  $xs <\sim\sim> [] \longleftrightarrow xs = []$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_sing\_imp*:  $ys <\sim\sim> xs \implies xs = [y] \implies ys = [y]$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_sing\_eq* [iff]:  $ys <\sim\sim> [y] \longleftrightarrow ys = [y]$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_sing\_eq2* [iff]:  $[y] <\sim\sim> ys \longleftrightarrow ys = [y]$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_remove*:  $x \in \text{set } ys \implies ys <\sim\sim> x \# \text{remove1 } x \text{ } ys$   
**by** *simp*

Congruence rule

**proposition** *perm\_remove\_perm*:  $xs <\sim\sim> ys \implies \text{remove1 } z \text{ } xs <\sim\sim> \text{remove1 } z \text{ } ys$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *remove\_hd* [simp]:  $\text{remove1 } z \text{ } (z \# xs) = xs$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *cons\_perm\_imp\_perm*:  $z \# xs <\sim\sim> z \# ys \implies xs <\sim\sim> ys$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *cons\_perm\_eq* [simp]:  $z \# xs <\sim\sim> z \# ys \longleftrightarrow xs <\sim\sim> ys$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *append\_perm\_imp\_perm*:  $zs @ xs <\sim\sim> zs @ ys \implies xs <\sim\sim> ys$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_append1\_eq* [iff]:  $zs @ xs <\sim\sim> zs @ ys \longleftrightarrow xs <\sim\sim> ys$   
**by** *simp*

**proposition** *perm\_append2\_eq* [iff]:  $xs @ zs <\sim\sim> ys @ zs \longleftrightarrow xs <\sim\sim> ys$   
**by** *simp*



end

## 5 Permutations of a Multiset

**theory** *Multiset\_Permutations*

**imports**

*Complex\_Main*

*Permutations*

**begin**

**lemma** *mset\_tl*:  $xs \neq [] \implies mset\ (tl\ xs) = mset\ xs - \{\#hd\ xs\# \}$   
**by** (*cases xs*) *simp\_all*

**lemma** *mset\_set\_image\_inj*:

**assumes** *inj\_on f A*

**shows**  $mset\_set\ (f\ ` A) = image\_mset\ f\ (mset\_set\ A)$

**proof** (*cases finite A*)

**case** *True*

**from** *this* **and** *assms* **show** *?thesis* **by** (*induction A*) *auto*

**qed** (*insert assms, simp add: finite\_image\_iff*)

**lemma** *multiset\_remove\_induct* [*case\_names empty remove*]:

**assumes**  $P\ \{\#\} \wedge A.\ A \neq \{\#\} \implies (\bigwedge x. x \in\# A \implies P\ (A - \{\#x\# \})) \implies P\ A$

**shows**  $P\ A$

**proof** (*induction A rule: full\_multiset\_induct*)

**case** (*less A*)

**hence** *IH*:  $P\ B$  **if**  $B \subset\# A$  **for** *B* **using** *that* **by** *blast*

**show** *?case*

**proof** (*cases A = {\#}*)

**case** *True*

**thus** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: assms*)

**next**

**case** *False*

**hence**  $P\ (A - \{\#x\# \})$  **if**  $x \in\# A$  **for** *x*

**using** *that* **by** (*intro IH*) (*simp add: mset\_subset\_diff\_self*)

**from** *False* **and** *this* **show**  $P\ A$  **by** (*rule assms*)

**qed**

**qed**

**lemma** *map\_list\_bind*:  $map\ g\ (List.bind\ xs\ f) = List.bind\ xs\ (map\ g \circ f)$

**by** (*simp add: List.bind\_def map\_concat*)

**lemma** *mset\_eq\_mset\_set\_imp\_distinct*:

$finite\ A \implies mset\_set\ A = mset\ xs \implies distinct\ xs$

**proof** (*induction xs arbitrary: A*)

**case** (*Cons x xs A*)

```

from Cons.prems(2) have  $x \in \# \text{ mset\_set } A$  by simp
with Cons.prems(1) have [simp]:  $x \in A$  by simp
from Cons.prems have  $x \notin \# \text{ mset\_set } (A - \{x\})$  by simp
also from Cons.prems have  $\text{mset\_set } (A - \{x\}) = \text{mset\_set } A - \{\#x\}$ 
  by (subst mset_set_Diff) simp_all
also have  $\text{mset\_set } A = \text{mset } (x \# xs)$  by (simp add: Cons.prems)
also have  $\dots - \{\#x\} = \text{mset } xs$  by simp
finally have [simp]:  $x \notin \text{set } xs$  by (simp add: in_multiset_in_set)
  from Cons.prems show ?case by (auto intro!: Cons.IH[of  $A - \{x\}$ ] simp:
mset_set_Diff)
qed simp_all

```

## 5.1 Permutations of a multiset

**definition** *permutations\_of\_multiset* :: 'a multiset  $\Rightarrow$  'a list set **where**  
*permutations\_of\_multiset*  $A = \{xs. \text{mset } xs = A\}$

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_multisetI*:  $\text{mset } xs = A \implies xs \in \text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A$   
**by** (simp add: permutations\_of\_multiset\_def)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_multisetD*:  $xs \in \text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A \implies \text{mset } xs = A$   
**by** (simp add: permutations\_of\_multiset\_def)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_multiset\_Cons\_iff*:  
 $x \# xs \in \text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A \iff x \in \# A \wedge xs \in \text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\})$   
**by** (auto simp: permutations\_of\_multiset\_def)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_multiset\_empty* [simp]:  $\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } \{\#\} = \{\emptyset\}$   
**unfolding** permutations\_of\_multiset\_def **by** simp

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_multiset\_nonempty*:  
**assumes** nonempty:  $A \neq \{\#\}$   
**shows**  $\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A =$   
 $(\bigcup x \in \text{set\_mset } A. ((\#) x) \cdot \text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\}))$   
(is  $\_ = ?rhs$ )

**proof** safe

```

fix xs assume xs  $\in \text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A$ 
hence mset_xs:  $\text{mset } xs = A$  by (simp add: permutations_of_multiset_def)
hence xs  $\neq \emptyset$  by (auto simp: nonempty)
then obtain x xs' where xs:  $xs = x \# xs'$  by (cases xs) simp_all
with mset_xs have  $x \in \text{set\_mset } A$   $xs' \in \text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\})$ 
  by (auto simp: permutations_of_multiset_def)
with xs show xs  $\in ?rhs$  by auto
qed (auto simp: permutations_of_multiset_def)

```

```

lemma permutations_of_multiset_singleton [simp]: permutations_of_multiset {#x#}
= {[x]}
  by (simp add: permutations_of_multiset_nonempty)

lemma permutations_of_multiset_doubleton:
permutations_of_multiset {#x,y#} = {[x,y], [y,x]}
  by (simp add: permutations_of_multiset_nonempty insert_commute)

lemma rev_permutations_of_multiset [simp]:
  rev 'permutations_of_multiset A = permutations_of_multiset A
proof
  have rev ' rev ' permutations_of_multiset A ⊆ rev ' permutations_of_multiset A
  unfolding permutations_of_multiset_def by auto
  also have rev ' rev ' permutations_of_multiset A = permutations_of_multiset A
  by (simp add: image_image)
  finally show permutations_of_multiset A ⊆ rev ' permutations_of_multiset A
  .
next
  show rev ' permutations_of_multiset A ⊆ permutations_of_multiset A
  unfolding permutations_of_multiset_def by auto
qed

lemma length_finite_permutations_of_multiset:
xs ∈ permutations_of_multiset A ⇒ length xs = size A
  by (auto simp: permutations_of_multiset_def)

lemma permutations_of_multiset_lists: permutations_of_multiset A ⊆ lists (set_mset A)
  by (auto simp: permutations_of_multiset_def)

lemma finite_permutations_of_multiset [simp]: finite (permutations_of_multiset A)
proof (rule finite_subset)
  show permutations_of_multiset A ⊆ {xs. set xs ⊆ set_mset A ∧ length xs = size A}
  by (auto simp: permutations_of_multiset_def)
  show finite {xs. set xs ⊆ set_mset A ∧ length xs = size A}
  by (rule finite_lists_length_eq) simp_all
qed

lemma permutations_of_multiset_not_empty [simp]: permutations_of_multiset A ≠ {}
proof -
  from ex_mset[of A] obtain xs where mset xs = A ..
  thus ?thesis by (auto simp: permutations_of_multiset_def)
qed

```

```

lemma permutations_of_multiset_image:
  permutations_of_multiset (image_mset f A) = map f ‘ permutations_of_multiset
  A
proof safe
  fix xs assume A: xs ∈ permutations_of_multiset (image_mset f A)
  from ex_mset[of A] obtain ys where ys: mset ys = A ..
  with A have mset xs = mset (map f ys)
    by (simp add: permutations_of_multiset_def)
  then obtain σ where σ: σ permutes {..length (map f ys)} permute_list σ
  (map f ys) = xs
    by (rule mset_eq_permutation)
  with ys have xs = map f (permute_list σ ys)
    by (simp add: permute_list_map)
  moreover from σ ys have permute_list σ ys ∈ permutations_of_multiset A
    by (simp add: permutations_of_multiset_def)
  ultimately show xs ∈ map f ‘ permutations_of_multiset A by blast
qed (auto simp: permutations_of_multiset_def)

```

## 5.2 Cardinality of permutations

In this section, we prove some basic facts about the number of permutations of a multiset.

**context**

**begin**

```

private lemma multiset_prod_fact_insert:
  ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } (A + \{\#x\})}. \text{fact } (\text{count } (A + \{\#x\}) \ y)$ ) =
  (count A x + 1) * ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } A}. \text{fact } (\text{count } A \ y)$ )
proof –
  have ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } (A + \{\#x\})}. \text{fact } (\text{count } (A + \{\#x\}) \ y)$ ) =
    ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } (A + \{\#x\})}. (\text{if } y = x \text{ then } \text{count } A \ x + 1 \text{ else } 1) * \text{fact } (\text{count } A \ y)$ )
    by (intro prod.cong) simp_all
  also have ... = (count A x + 1) * ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } (A + \{\#x\})}. \text{fact } (\text{count } A \ y)$ )
    by (simp add: prod.distrib)
  also have ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } (A + \{\#x\})}. \text{fact } (\text{count } A \ y)$ ) = ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } A}. \text{fact } (\text{count } A \ y)$ )
    by (intro prod.mono_neutral_right) (auto simp: not_in_iff)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

```

private lemma multiset_prod_fact_remove:
  x ∈ # A ⇒ ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } A}. \text{fact } (\text{count } A \ y)$ ) =
    count A x * ( $\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } (A - \{\#x\})}. \text{fact } (\text{count } (A - \{\#x\}) \ y)$ )
    using multiset_prod_fact_insert[of A - {\#x\} x] by simp

```

**lemma** *card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_aux*:  
 $\text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A) * (\prod_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{fact} (\text{count } A \ x)) = \text{fact} (\text{size } A)$   
**proof** (*induction A rule: multiset\_remove\_induct*)  
**case** (*remove A*)  
**have**  $\text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A) =$   
 $\text{card} (\bigcup_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} (\#) \ x \ \text{'permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\# \}))$   
**by** (*simp add: permutations\_of\_multiset\_nonempty remove.hyps*)  
**also have**  $\dots = (\sum_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\# \})))$   
**by** (*subst card\_UN\_disjoint*) (*auto simp: card\_image*)  
**also have**  $\dots * (\prod_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{fact} (\text{count } A \ x)) =$   
 $(\sum_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\# \})) * (\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{fact} (\text{count } A \ y)))$   
**by** (*subst sum\_distrib\_right*) *simp\_all*  
**also have**  $\dots = (\sum_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{count } A \ x * \text{fact} (\text{size } A - 1))$   
**proof** (*intro sum.cong refl*)  
**fix** *x* **assume**  $x \in \# \ A$   
**have**  $\text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\# \})) * (\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{fact} (\text{count } A \ y)) =$   
 $\text{count } A \ x * (\text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\# \})) * (\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } (A - \{\#x\# \})} \text{fact} (\text{count } (A - \{\#x\# \}) \ y)))$  (*is ?lhs*  
 $= \_$ )  
**by** (*subst multiset\_prod\_fact\_remove[OF x]*) *simp\_all*  
**also note** *remove.IH[OF x]*  
**also from** *x* **have**  $\text{size } (A - \{\#x\# \}) = \text{size } A - 1$  **by** (*simp add: size\_Diff\_submset*)  
**finally show**  $?lhs = \text{count } A \ x * \text{fact} (\text{size } A - 1)$  .  
**qed**  
**also have**  $(\sum_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{count } A \ x * \text{fact} (\text{size } A - 1)) =$   
 $\text{size } A * \text{fact} (\text{size } A - 1)$   
**by** (*simp add: sum\_distrib\_right size\_multiset\_overloaded\_eq*)  
**also from** *remove.hyps* **have**  $\dots = \text{fact} (\text{size } A)$   
**by** (*cases size A*) *auto*  
**finally show**  $?case$  .  
**qed** *simp\_all*

**theorem** *card\_permutations\_of\_multiset*:  
 $\text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A) = \text{fact} (\text{size } A) \text{ div } (\prod_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{fact} (\text{count } A \ x))$   
 $(\prod_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{fact} (\text{count } A \ x) :: \text{nat}) \text{ dvd } \text{fact} (\text{size } A)$   
**by** (*simp\_all flip: card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_aux[of A]*)

**lemma** *card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_insert\_aux*:  
 $\text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A + \{\#x\# \})) * (\text{count } A \ x + 1) =$   
 $(\text{size } A + 1) * \text{card} (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A)$   
**proof** –  
**note** *card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_aux[of A + {\#x\#}]*  
**also have**  $\text{fact} (\text{size } (A + \{\#x\# \})) = (\text{size } A + 1) * \text{fact} (\text{size } A)$  **by** *simp*  
**also note** *multiset\_prod\_fact\_insert[of A x]*  
**also note** *card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_aux[of A, symmetric]*

**finally have**  $\text{card } (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A + \{\#x\# \})) * (\text{count } A \ x + 1)$   
 $*$   
 $(\prod_{y \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{fact } (\text{count } A \ y)) =$   
 $(\text{size } A + 1) * \text{card } (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A) *$   
 $(\prod_{x \in \text{set\_mset } A} \text{fact } (\text{count } A \ x))$  **by** (*simp only: mult\_ac*)  
**thus** *?thesis* **by** (*subst (asm) mult\_right\_cancel simp\_all*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_remove\_aux*:  
**assumes**  $x \in \# A$   
**shows**  $\text{card } (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A) * \text{count } A \ x =$   
 $\text{size } A * \text{card } (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\# \}))$   
**proof** –  
**from** *assms* **have**  $A - \{\#x\# \} + \{\#x\# \} = A$  **by** *simp*  
**from** *assms* **have**  $\text{size } A = \text{size } (A - \{\#x\# \}) + 1$   
**by** (*subst A [symmetric], subst size\_union*) *simp*  
**show** *?thesis*  
**using** *card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_insert\_aux* [of  $A - \{\#x\# \}$   $x$ , *unfolded*  
 $A$ ] *assms*  
**by** (*simp add: B*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *real\_card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_remove*:  
**assumes**  $x \in \# A$   
**shows**  $\text{real } (\text{card } (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\# \}))) =$   
 $\text{real } (\text{card } (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A) * \text{count } A \ x) / \text{real } (\text{size } A)$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*subst card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_remove\_aux [OF assms]*)  
*auto*

**lemma** *real\_card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_remove'*:  
**assumes**  $x \in \# A$   
**shows**  $\text{real } (\text{card } (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } A)) =$   
 $\text{real } (\text{size } A * \text{card } (\text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (A - \{\#x\# \}))) / \text{real}$   
 $(\text{count } A \ x)$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*subst card\_permutations\_of\_multiset\_remove\_aux [OF assms,*  
*symmetric]*) *simp*

**end**

### 5.3 Permutations of a set

**definition** *permutations\_of\_set* :: 'a set  $\Rightarrow$  'a list set **where**  
 $\text{permutations\_of\_set } A = \{xs. \text{set } xs = A \wedge \text{distinct } xs\}$

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_altdef*:  
 $\text{finite } A \implies \text{permutations\_of\_set } A = \text{permutations\_of\_multiset } (\text{mset\_set } A)$   
**by** (*auto simp add: permutations\_of\_set\_def permutations\_of\_multiset\_def mset\_set\_set*  
 $\text{in\_multiset\_in\_set [symmetric] mset_eq\_mset\_set\_imp\_distinct}$ )

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_setI* [intro]:  
 assumes *set xs = A distinct xs*  
 shows *xs ∈ permutations\_of\_set A*  
 using *assms* **unfolding** *permutations\_of\_set\_def* **by** *simp*

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_setD*:  
 assumes *xs ∈ permutations\_of\_set A*  
 shows *set xs = A distinct xs*  
 using *assms* **unfolding** *permutations\_of\_set\_def* **by** *simp\_all*

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_lists*: *permutations\_of\_set A ⊆ lists A*  
**unfolding** *permutations\_of\_set\_def* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_empty* [simp]: *permutations\_of\_set {} = {[]}*  
**by** (*auto simp: permutations\_of\_set\_def*)

**lemma** *UN\_set\_permutations\_of\_set* [simp]:  
*finite A ⇒ (⋃ xs ∈ permutations\_of\_set A. set xs) = A*  
**using** *finite\_distinct\_list* **by** (*auto simp: permutations\_of\_set\_def*)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_infinite*:  
 $\neg \text{finite } A \implies \text{permutations\_of\_set } A = \{\}$   
**by** (*auto simp: permutations\_of\_set\_def*)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_nonempty*:  
 $A \neq \{\} \implies \text{permutations\_of\_set } A =$   
 $(\bigcup x \in A. (\lambda xs. x \# xs) \text{ 'permutations\_of\_set } (A - \{x\}))$   
**by** (*cases finite A*)  
*(simp\_all add: permutations\_of\_multiset\_nonempty mset\_set\_empty\_iff mset\_set\_Diff*  
 $\text{permutations\_of\_set\_altdef permutations\_of\_set\_infinite})$

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_singleton* [simp]: *permutations\_of\_set {x} = {[x]}*  
**by** (*subst permutations\_of\_set\_nonempty*) *auto*

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_doubleton*:  
 $x \neq y \implies \text{permutations\_of\_set } \{x, y\} = \{[x, y], [y, x]\}$   
**by** (*subst permutations\_of\_set\_nonempty*)  
*(simp\_all add: insert\_Diff\_if insert\_commute)*

**lemma** *rev\_permutations\_of\_set* [simp]:  
 $\text{rev 'permutations\_of\_set } A = \text{permutations\_of\_set } A$   
**by** (*cases finite A*) (*simp\_all add: permutations\_of\_set\_altdef permutations\_of\_set\_infinite*)

**lemma** *length\_finite\_permutations\_of\_set*:  
 $xs \in \text{permutations\_of\_set } A \implies \text{length } xs = \text{card } A$   
**by** (*auto simp: permutations\_of\_set\_def distinct\_card*)

**lemma** *finite\_permutations\_of\_set* [simp]: *finite (permutations\_of\_set A)*  
**by** (cases *finite A*) (simp\_all add: *permutations\_of\_set\_infinite permutations\_of\_set\_altdef*)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_empty\_iff* [simp]:  
*permutations\_of\_set A = {}*  $\longleftrightarrow$   $\neg$ *finite A*  
**unfolding** *permutations\_of\_set\_def* **using** *finite\_distinct\_list[of A]* **by** *auto*

**lemma** *card\_permutations\_of\_set* [simp]:  
*finite A*  $\implies$  *card (permutations\_of\_set A) = fact (card A)*  
**by** (simp add: *permutations\_of\_set\_altdef card\_permutations\_of\_multiset del: One\_nat\_def*)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_image\_inj*:  
**assumes** *inj: inj\_on f A*  
**shows** *permutations\_of\_set (f ` A) = map f ` permutations\_of\_set A*  
**by** (cases *finite A*)  
     (simp\_all add: *permutations\_of\_set\_infinite permutations\_of\_set\_altdef*  
                     *permutations\_of\_multiset\_image mset\_set\_image\_inj inj*  
     *finite\_image\_iff*)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_set\_image\_permutes*:  
 *$\sigma$  permutes A*  $\implies$  *map  $\sigma$  ` permutations\_of\_set A = permutations\_of\_set A*  
**by** (*subst permutations\_of\_set\_image\_inj [symmetric]*)  
     (simp\_all add: *permutes\_inj\_on permutes\_image*)

## 5.4 Code generation

First, we give code an implementation for permutations of lists.

**declare** *length\_remove1* [termination\_simp]

**fun** *permutations\_of\_list\_impl* **where**  
     *permutations\_of\_list\_impl xs = (if xs = [] then [] else*  
         *List.bind (remdups xs) ( $\lambda x$ . map ((#) x) (permutations\_of\_list\_impl (remove1*  
     *x xs))))*

**fun** *permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux* **where**  
     *permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux acc xs = (if xs = [] then [acc] else*  
         *List.bind (remdups xs) ( $\lambda x$ . permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux (x#acc) (remove1*  
     *x xs))))*

**declare** *permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux.simps* [simp del]

**declare** *permutations\_of\_list\_impl.simps* [simp del]

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_Nil* [simp]:  
*permutations\_of\_list\_impl [] = []*  
**by** (simp add: *permutations\_of\_list\_impl.simps*)

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_nonempty*:  
*xs  $\neq$  []  $\implies$  permutations\_of\_list\_impl xs =*



```
List.bind (remdups xs) (λx. map ((#) x) (permutations_of_list_impl (remove1
x xs)))
```

```
by (subst permutations_of_list_impl.simps) simp_all
```

**lemma** *set\_permutations\_of\_list\_impl*:

```
set (permutations_of_list_impl xs) = permutations_of_multiset (mset xs)
```

```
by (induction xs rule: permutations_of_list_impl.induct)
```

```
(subst permutations_of_list_impl.simps,
```

```
simp_all add: permutations_of_multiset_nonempty set_list_bind)
```

**lemma** *distinct\_permutations\_of\_list\_impl*:

```
distinct (permutations_of_list_impl xs)
```

```
by (induction xs rule: permutations_of_list_impl.induct,
```

```
subst permutations_of_list_impl.simps)
```

```
(auto intro!: distinct_list_bind simp: distinct_map o_def disjoint_family_on_def)
```

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux\_correct'*:

```
permutations_of_list_impl_aux acc xs =
```

```
map (λxs. rev xs @ acc) (permutations_of_list_impl xs)
```

```
by (induction acc xs rule: permutations_of_list_impl_aux.induct,
```

```
subst permutations_of_list_impl_aux.simps, subst permutations_of_list_impl.simps)
```

```
(auto simp: map_list_bind intro!: list_bind_cong)
```

**lemma** *permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux\_correct*:

```
permutations_of_list_impl_aux [] xs = map rev (permutations_of_list_impl xs)
```

```
by (simp add: permutations_of_list_impl_aux_correct')
```

**lemma** *distinct\_permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux*:

```
distinct (permutations_of_list_impl_aux acc xs)
```

```
by (simp add: permutations_of_list_impl_aux_correct' distinct_map
```

```
distinct_permutations_of_list_impl inj_on_def)
```

**lemma** *set\_permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux*:

```
set (permutations_of_list_impl_aux [] xs) = permutations_of_multiset (mset
```

```
xs)
```

```
by (simp add: permutations_of_list_impl_aux_correct set_permutations_of_list_impl)
```

**declare** *set\_permutations\_of\_list\_impl\_aux* [symmetric, code]

**value** [code] *permutations\_of\_multiset* {#1,2,3,4::int#}

Now we turn to permutations of sets. We define an auxiliary version with an accumulator to avoid having to map over the results.

**function** *permutations\_of\_set\_aux* **where**

```
permutations_of_set_aux acc A =
```

```
(if ¬finite A then {} else if A = {} then {acc} else
```

```
(⋃ x∈A. permutations_of_set_aux (x#acc) (A - {x})))
```

**by** *auto*

**termination** **by** (relation Wellfounded.measure (card ∘ snd)) (simp\_all add: card\_gt\_0\_iff)

```

lemma permutations_of_set_aux_altdef:
  permutations_of_set_aux acc A = ( $\lambda xs. rev\ xs\ @\ acc$ ) ‘ permutations_of_set A
proof (cases finite A)
  assume finite A
  thus ?thesis
proof (induction A arbitrary: acc rule: finite_psubset_induct)
  case (psubset A acc)
  show ?case
  proof (cases A = {})
    case False
    note [simp del] = permutations_of_set_aux.simps
    from psubset.hyps False
    have permutations_of_set_aux acc A =
      ( $\bigcup y \in A. permutations\_of\_set\_aux\ (y \# acc)\ (A - \{y\})$ )
    by (subst permutations_of_set_aux.simps) simp_all
    also have ... = ( $\bigcup y \in A. (\lambda xs. rev\ xs\ @\ acc)\ ‘\ (\lambda xs. y \# xs)\ ‘\ permutations\_of\_set\ (A - \{y\})$ )
    apply (rule arg_cong [of_ _ Union], rule image_cong)
    apply (simp_all add: image_image)
    apply (subst psubset)
    apply auto
    done
    also from False have ... = ( $\lambda xs. rev\ xs\ @\ acc$ ) ‘ permutations_of_set A
    by (subst (2) permutations_of_set_nonempty) (simp_all add: image_UN)
    finally show ?thesis .
  qed simp_all
qed
qed (simp_all add: permutations_of_set_infinite)

declare permutations_of_set_aux.simps [simp del]

lemma permutations_of_set_aux_correct:
  permutations_of_set_aux [] A = permutations_of_set A
  by (simp add: permutations_of_set_aux_altdef)

In another refinement step, we define a version on lists.

declare length_remove1 [termination_simp]

fun permutations_of_set_aux_list where
  permutations_of_set_aux_list acc xs =
    (if xs = [] then [acc] else
      List.bind xs ( $\lambda x. permutations\_of\_set\_aux\_list\ (x \# acc)\ (List.remove1\ x\ xs)$ ))

definition permutations_of_set_list where
  permutations_of_set_list xs = permutations_of_set_aux_list [] xs

declare permutations_of_set_aux_list.simps [simp del]

```

```

lemma permutations_of_set_aux_list_refine:
  assumes distinct xs
  shows set (permutations_of_set_aux_list acc xs) = permutations_of_set_aux
acc (set xs)
  using assms
  by (induction acc xs rule: permutations_of_set_aux_list.induct)
    (subst permutations_of_set_aux_list.simps,
     subst permutations_of_set_aux.simps,
     simp_all add: set_list_bind)

```

The permutation lists contain no duplicates if the inputs contain no duplicates. Therefore, these functions can easily be used when working with a representation of sets by distinct lists. The same approach should generalise to any kind of set implementation that supports a monadic bind operation, and since the results are disjoint, merging should be cheap.

```

lemma distinct_permutations_of_set_aux_list:
  distinct xs  $\implies$  distinct (permutations_of_set_aux_list acc xs)
  by (induction acc xs rule: permutations_of_set_aux_list.induct)
    (subst permutations_of_set_aux_list.simps,
     auto intro!: distinct_list_bind simp: disjoint_family_on_def
     permutations_of_set_aux_list_refine permutations_of_set_aux_altdef)

```

```

lemma distinct_permutations_of_set_list:
  distinct xs  $\implies$  distinct (permutations_of_set_list xs)
  by (simp add: permutations_of_set_list_def distinct_permutations_of_set_aux_list)

```

```

lemma permutations_of_list:
  permutations_of_set (set xs) = set (permutations_of_set_list (remdups xs))
  by (simp add: permutations_of_set_aux_correct [symmetric]
     permutations_of_set_aux_list_refine permutations_of_set_list_def)

```

```

lemma permutations_of_list_code [code]:
  permutations_of_set (set xs) = set (permutations_of_set_list (remdups xs))
  permutations_of_set (List.coset xs) =
    Code.abort (STR "Permutation of set complement not supported")
    ( $\lambda$ _. permutations_of_set (List.coset xs))
  by (simp_all add: permutations_of_list)

```

```

value [code] permutations_of_set (set "abcd")

```

```

end

```

```

theory Cycles
  imports
    HOL-Library.FuncSet
    Permutations
  begin

```

## 6 Cycles

### 6.1 Definitions

**abbreviation**  $\text{cycle} :: 'a \text{ list} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$   
**where**  $\text{cycle } cs \equiv \text{distinct } cs$

**fun**  $\text{cycle\_of\_list} :: 'a \text{ list} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a$   
**where**  
   $\text{cycle\_of\_list } (i \# j \# cs) = \text{transpose } i \ j \circ \text{cycle\_of\_list } (j \# cs)$   
   $\mid \text{cycle\_of\_list } cs = \text{id}$

### 6.2 Basic Properties

We start proving that the function derived from a cycle rotates its support list.

**lemma**  $\text{id\_outside\_supp}$ :  
  **assumes**  $x \notin \text{set } cs$  **shows**  $(\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) \ x = x$   
  **using**  $\text{assms}$  **by**  $(\text{induct } cs \text{ rule: cycle\_of\_list.induct}) (\text{simp\_all})$

**lemma**  $\text{permutation\_of\_cycle}$ :  $\text{permutation } (\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs)$   
**proof**  $(\text{induct } cs \text{ rule: cycle\_of\_list.induct})$   
  **case** 1 **thus** ?case  
    **using**  $\text{permutation\_compose}[OF \text{ permutation\_swap\_id}]$  **unfolding**  $\text{comp\_apply}$   
**by**  $\text{simp}$   
**qed**  $\text{simp\_all}$

**lemma**  $\text{cycle\_permutes}$ :  $(\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) \text{ permutes } (\text{set } cs)$   
  **using**  $\text{permutation\_bijective}[OF \text{ permutation\_of\_cycle}] \text{id\_outside\_supp}[of \text{ } cs]$   
  **by**  $(\text{simp add: bij\_iff permutes\_def})$

**theorem**  $\text{cyclic\_rotation}$ :  
  **assumes**  $\text{cycle } cs$  **shows**  $\text{map } ((\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) \ \frown \ n) \ cs = \text{rotate } n \ cs$   
**proof** –  
  { **have**  $\text{map } (\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) \ cs = \text{rotate1 } cs$  **using**  $\text{assms}(1)$   
    **proof**  $(\text{induction } cs \text{ rule: cycle\_of\_list.induct})$   
      **case** (1  $i \ j \ cs$ )  
      **then have**  $\langle i \notin \text{set } cs \rangle \langle j \notin \text{set } cs \rangle$   
      **by**  $\text{auto}$   
      **then have**  $\langle \text{map } (\text{Transposition.transpose } i \ j) \ cs = cs \rangle$   
      **by**  $(\text{auto intro: map\_idI simp add: transpose\_eq\_iff})$   
      **show** ?case  
    **proof** (cases)  
      **assume**  $cs = \text{Nil}$  **thus** ?thesis **by**  $\text{simp}$   
    **next**  
      **assume**  $cs \neq \text{Nil}$  **hence**  $\text{ge\_two: length } (j \# cs) \geq 2$   
      **using**  $\text{not\_less}$  **by**  $\text{auto}$   
      **have**  $\text{map } (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (i \# j \# cs)) \ (i \# j \# cs) =$

```

      map (transpose i j) (map (cycle_of_list (j # cs)) (i # j # cs)) by
simp
  also have ... = map (transpose i j) (i # (rotate1 (j # cs)))
    by (metis 1.IH 1.prem distinct.simps(2) id_outside_supp list.simps(9))
  also have ... = map (transpose i j) (i # (cs @ [j])) by simp
  also have ... = j # (map (transpose i j) cs) @ [i] by simp
  also have ... = j # cs @ [i]
    using ⟨map (Transposition.transpose i j) cs = cs⟩ by simp
  also have ... = rotate1 (i # j # cs) by simp
  finally show ?thesis .
qed
qed simp_all }
note cyclic_rotation' = this

show ?thesis
  using cyclic_rotation' by (induct n) (auto, metis map_map rotate1_rotate_swap
rotate_map)
qed

corollary cycle_is_surj:
  assumes cycle cs shows (cycle_of_list cs) ' (set cs) = (set cs)
  using cyclic_rotation[OF assms, of Suc 0] by (simp add: image_set)

corollary cycle_is_id_root:
  assumes cycle cs shows (cycle_of_list cs) ^~ (length cs) = id
proof -
  have map ((cycle_of_list cs) ^~ (length cs)) cs = cs
    unfolding cyclic_rotation[OF assms] by simp
  hence ((cycle_of_list cs) ^~ (length cs)) i = i if i ∈ set cs for i
    using that map_eq_conv by fastforce
  moreover have ((cycle_of_list cs) ^~ n) i = i if i ∉ set cs for i n
    using id_outside_supp[OF that] by (induct n) (simp_all)
  ultimately show ?thesis
    by fastforce
qed

corollary cycle_of_list_rotate_independent:
  assumes cycle cs shows (cycle_of_list cs) = (cycle_of_list (rotate n cs))
proof -
  { fix cs :: 'a list assume cs: cycle cs
    have (cycle_of_list cs) = (cycle_of_list (rotate1 cs))
      proof -
        from cs have rotate1_cs: cycle (rotate1 cs) by simp
        hence map (cycle_of_list (rotate1 cs)) (rotate1 cs) = (rotate 2 cs)
          using cyclic_rotation[OF rotate1_cs, of 1] by (simp add: numeral_2_eq_2)
        moreover have map (cycle_of_list cs) (rotate1 cs) = (rotate 2 cs)
          using cyclic_rotation[OF cs]
        by (metis One_nat_def Suc_1 funpow.simps(2) id_apply map_map rotate0
rotate_Suc)

```

**ultimately have**  $(\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) \ i = (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{rotate1 } cs)) \ i$  **if**  $i \in \text{set } cs$  **for**  $i$   
**using** *that*  $\text{map\_eq\_conv}$  **unfolding**  $\text{sym}[OF \ \text{set\_rotate1}[of \ cs]]$  **by** *fastforce*  
  
**moreover have**  $(\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) \ i = (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{rotate1 } cs)) \ i$  **if**  $i \notin \text{set } cs$  **for**  $i$   
**using** *that* **by**  $(\text{simp add: id\_outside\_supp})$   
**ultimately show**  $(\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) = (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{rotate1 } cs))$   
**by** *blast*  
**qed** } **note**  $\text{rotate1\_lemma} = \text{this}$   
  
**show** *?thesis*  
**using**  $\text{rotate1\_lemma}[of \ \text{rotate } n \ cs]$  **by**  $(\text{induct } n) \ (auto, \text{metis } \text{assms } \text{distinct\_rotate } \text{rotate1\_lemma})$   
**qed**

### 6.3 Conjugation of cycles

**lemma** *conjugation\_of\_cycle*:  
**assumes** *cycle cs and bij p*  
**shows**  $p \circ (\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) \circ (\text{inv } p) = \text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{map } p \ cs)$   
**using** *assms*  
**proof** (*induction cs rule: cycle\_of\_list.induct*)  
**case**  $(1 \ i \ j \ cs)$   
**have**  $p \circ \text{cycle\_of\_list } (i \ \# \ j \ \# \ cs) \circ \text{inv } p =$   
 $(p \circ (\text{transpose } i \ j) \circ \text{inv } p) \circ (p \circ \text{cycle\_of\_list } (j \ \# \ cs) \circ \text{inv } p)$   
**by**  $(\text{simp add: assms}(2) \ \text{bij\_is\_inj } \text{fun.map\_comp})$   
**also have**  $\dots = (\text{transpose } (p \ i) \ (p \ j)) \circ (p \circ \text{cycle\_of\_list } (j \ \# \ cs) \circ \text{inv } p)$   
**using**  $1.\text{prems}(2)$  **by**  $(\text{simp add: bij\_inv\_eq\_iff } \text{transpose\_apply\_commute } \text{fun\_eq\_iff } \text{bij\_betw\_inv\_into\_left})$   
**finally have**  $p \circ \text{cycle\_of\_list } (i \ \# \ j \ \# \ cs) \circ \text{inv } p =$   
 $(\text{transpose } (p \ i) \ (p \ j)) \circ (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{map } p \ (j \ \# \ cs)))$   
**using**  $1.IH \ 1.\text{prems}(1) \ \text{assms}(2)$  **by** *fastforce*  
**thus** *?case* **by**  $(\text{simp add: fun\_eq\_iff})$   
**next**  
**case**  $2\_1$  **thus** *?case*  
**by**  $(\text{metis } \text{bij\_is\_surj } \text{comp\_id } \text{cycle\_of\_list.simps}(2) \ \text{list.simps}(8) \ \text{surj\_iff})$   
**next**  
**case**  $2\_2$  **thus** *?case*  
**by**  $(\text{metis } \text{bij\_is\_surj } \text{comp\_id } \text{cycle\_of\_list.simps}(3) \ \text{list.simps}(8) \ \text{list.simps}(9) \ \text{surj\_iff})$   
**qed**

### 6.4 When Cycles Commute

**lemma** *cycles\_commute*:  
**assumes** *cycle p cycle q and set p  $\cap$  set q = {}*  
**shows**  $(\text{cycle\_of\_list } p) \circ (\text{cycle\_of\_list } q) = (\text{cycle\_of\_list } q) \circ (\text{cycle\_of\_list } p)$   
**proof**

```

{ fix p :: 'a list and q :: 'a list and i :: 'a
  assume A: cycle p cycle q set p ∩ set q = {} i ∈ set p i ∉ set q
  have ((cycle_of_list p) ∘ (cycle_of_list q)) i =
    ((cycle_of_list q) ∘ (cycle_of_list p)) i
  proof -
    have ((cycle_of_list p) ∘ (cycle_of_list q)) i = (cycle_of_list p) i
      using id_outside_supp[OF A(5)] by simp
    also have ... = ((cycle_of_list q) ∘ (cycle_of_list p)) i
      using id_outside_supp[of (cycle_of_list p) i] cycle_is_surj[OF A(1)]
    A(3,4) by fastforce
    finally show ?thesis .
  qed } note aui_lemma = this

fix i consider i ∈ set p i ∉ set q | i ∉ set p i ∈ set q | i ∉ set p i ∉ set q
  using ⟨set p ∩ set q = {}⟩ by blast
thus ((cycle_of_list p) ∘ (cycle_of_list q)) i = ((cycle_of_list q) ∘ (cycle_of_list
p)) i
proof cases
  case 1 thus ?thesis
    using aui_lemma[OF assms] by simp
next
  case 2 thus ?thesis
    using aui_lemma[OF assms(2,1)] assms(3) by (simp add: ac_simps)
next
  case 3 thus ?thesis
    by (simp add: id_outside_supp)
qed
qed

```

## 6.5 Cycles from Permutations

### 6.5.1 Exponentiation of permutations

Some important properties of permutations before defining how to extract its cycles.

**lemma** *permutation\_funpow*:

**assumes** *permutation p* **shows** *permutation (p  $\frown$  n)*  
**using** *assms* **by** (*induct n*) (*simp\_all add: permutation\_compose*)

**lemma** *permutes\_funpow*:

**assumes** *p permutes S* **shows** *(p  $\frown$  n) permutes S*  
**using** *assms* **by** (*induct n*) (*simp add: permutes\_def, metis funpow\_Suc\_right permutes\_compose*)

**lemma** *funpow\_diff*:

**assumes** *inj p* **and** *i ≤ j* *(p  $\frown$  i) a = (p  $\frown$  j) a* **shows** *(p  $\frown$  (j - i)) a = a*  
**proof** -  
 have *(p  $\frown$  i) ((p  $\frown$  (j - i)) a) = (p  $\frown$  i) a*  
**using** *assms(2-3)* **by** (*metis (no\_types) add\_diff\_inverse\_nat funpow\_add*)

not\_le o\_def)  
 thus ?thesis  
 unfolding inj\_eq[OF inj\_fn[OF assms(1)], of i] .  
 qed

**lemma permutation\_is\_nilpotent:**  
 assumes permutation  $p$  obtains  $n$  where  $(p \smallfrown n) = id$  and  $n > 0$   
**proof** –  
 obtain  $S$  where finite  $S$  and  $p$  permutes  $S$   
 using assms unfolding permutation\_permutes by blast  
 hence  $\exists n. (p \smallfrown n) = id \wedge n > 0$   
**proof** (induct  $S$  arbitrary:  $p$ )  
 case empty thus ?case  
 using id\_funpow[of 1] unfolding permutes\_empty by blast  
 next  
 case (insert  $s$   $S$ )  
 have  $(\lambda n. (p \smallfrown n) s) \text{ ' } UNIV \subseteq (insert\ s\ S)$   
 using permutes\_in\_image[OF permutes\_funpow[OF insert(4)], of \_  $s$ ] by  
 auto  
 hence  $\neg inj\_on\ (\lambda n. (p \smallfrown n) s)\ UNIV$   
 using insert(1) infinite\_iff\_countable\_subset unfolding sym[OF finite\_insert,  
 of  $S$   $s$ ] by metis  
 then obtain  $i\ j$  where  $ij: i < j\ (p \smallfrown i) s = (p \smallfrown j) s$   
 unfolding inj\_on\_def by (metis nat\_neq\_iff)  
 hence  $(p \smallfrown (j - i)) s = s$   
 using funpow\_diff[OF permutes\_inj[OF insert(4)]] le\_eq\_less\_or\_eq by  
 blast  
 hence  $p \smallfrown (j - i)$  permutes  $S$   
 using permutes\_superset[OF permutes\_funpow[OF insert(4), of  $j - i$ , of  $S$ ]  
 by auto  
 then obtain  $n$  where  $n: ((p \smallfrown (j - i)) \smallfrown n) = id\ n > 0$   
 using insert(3) by blast  
 thus ?case  
 using ij(1) nat\_0\_less\_mult\_iff zero\_less\_diff unfolding funpow\_mult by  
 metis  
 qed  
 thus thesis  
 using that by blast  
 qed

**lemma permutation\_is\_nilpotent':**  
 assumes permutation  $p$  obtains  $n$  where  $(p \smallfrown n) = id$  and  $n > m$   
**proof** –  
 obtain  $n$  where  $(p \smallfrown n) = id$  and  $n > 0$   
 using permutation\_is\_nilpotent[OF assms] by blast  
 then obtain  $k$  where  $n * k > m$   
 by (metis dividend\_less\_times\_div mult\_Suc\_right)  
 from  $\langle (p \smallfrown n) = id \rangle$  have  $p \smallfrown (n * k) = id$   
 by (induct  $k$ ) (simp, metis funpow\_mult id\_funpow)



**with**  $\langle n * k > m \rangle$  **show** *thesis*  
**using** *that* **by** *blast*  
**qed**

### 6.5.2 Extraction of cycles from permutations

**definition** *least\_power* ::  $('a \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow \text{nat}$   
**where** *least\_power*  $f\ x = (\text{LEAST } n. (f \hat{\sim} n)\ x = x \wedge n > 0)$

**abbreviation** *support* ::  $('a \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list}$   
**where** *support*  $p\ x \equiv \text{map } (\lambda i. (p \hat{\sim} i)\ x) [0..< (\text{least\_power } p\ x)]$

**lemma** *least\_powerI*:  
**assumes**  $(f \hat{\sim} n)\ x = x$  **and**  $n > 0$   
**shows**  $(f \hat{\sim} (\text{least\_power } f\ x))\ x = x$  **and**  $\text{least\_power } f\ x > 0$   
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *least\_power\_def* **by** (*metis* (*mono\_tags*, *lifting*) *LeastI*)**+**

**lemma** *least\_power\_le*:  
**assumes**  $(f \hat{\sim} n)\ x = x$  **and**  $n > 0$  **shows**  $\text{least\_power } f\ x \leq n$   
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *least\_power\_def* **by** (*simp* *add*: *Least\_le*)

**lemma** *least\_power\_of\_permutation*:  
**assumes** *permutation*  $p$  **shows**  $(p \hat{\sim} (\text{least\_power } p\ a))\ a = a$  **and**  $\text{least\_power } p\ a > 0$   
**using** *permutation\_is\_nilpotent*[*OF* *assms*] *least\_powerI* **by** (*metis* *id\_apply*)**+**

**lemma** *least\_power\_gt\_one*:  
**assumes** *permutation*  $p$  **and**  $p\ a \neq a$  **shows**  $\text{least\_power } p\ a > \text{Suc } 0$   
**using** *least\_power\_of\_permutation*[*OF* *assms*(1)] *assms*(2)  
**by** (*metis* *Suc\_lessI* *funpow.simps*(2) *funpow\_simps\_right*(1) *o\_id*)

**lemma** *least\_power\_minimal*:  
**assumes**  $(p \hat{\sim} n)\ a = a$  **shows**  $(\text{least\_power } p\ a)\ \text{dvd } n$   
**proof** (*cases*  $n = 0$ , *simp*)  
**let**  $?lpow = \text{least\_power } p$

**assume**  $n \neq 0$  **then have**  $n > 0$  **by** *simp*  
**hence**  $(p \hat{\sim} (?lpow\ a))\ a = a$  **and**  $\text{least\_power } p\ a > 0$   
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *least\_power\_def* **by** (*metis* (*mono\_tags*, *lifting*) *LeastI*)**+**  
**hence** *aux\_lemma*:  $(p \hat{\sim} ((?lpow\ a) * k))\ a = a$  **for**  $k :: \text{nat}$   
**by** (*induct*  $k$ ) (*simp\_all* *add*: *funpow\_add*)

**have**  $(p \hat{\sim} (n \bmod ?lpow\ a))\ ((p \hat{\sim} (n - (n \bmod ?lpow\ a)))\ a) = (p \hat{\sim} n)\ a$   
**by** (*metis* *add\_diff\_inverse\_nat* *funpow\_add* *mod\_less\_eq\_dividend* *not\_less* *o\_apply*)  
**with**  $\langle (p \hat{\sim} n)\ a = a \rangle$  **have**  $(p \hat{\sim} (n \bmod ?lpow\ a))\ a = a$   
**using** *aux\_lemma* **by** (*simp* *add*: *minus\_mod\_eq\_mult\_div*)  
**hence**  $?lpow\ a \leq n \bmod ?lpow\ a$  **if**  $n \bmod ?lpow\ a > 0$

```

    using least_power_le[OF _ that, of p a] by simp
  with ‹least_power p a > 0› show (least_power p a) dvd n
    using mod_less_divisor not_le by blast
qed

```

```

lemma least_power_dvd:
  assumes permutation p shows (least_power p a) dvd n  $\longleftrightarrow$  (p  $\sim$  n) a = a
proof
  show (p  $\sim$  n) a = a  $\implies$  (least_power p a) dvd n
    using least_power_minimal[of _ p] by simp
  next
    have (p  $\sim$  ((least_power p a) * k)) a = a for k :: nat
      using least_power_of_permutation(1)[OF assms(1)] by (induct k) (simp_all
add: funpow_add)
    thus (least_power p a) dvd n  $\implies$  (p  $\sim$  n) a = a by blast
qed

```

```

theorem cycle_of_permutation:
  assumes permutation p shows cycle (support p a)
proof -
  have (least_power p a) dvd (j - i) if i  $\leq$  j j < least_power p a and (p  $\sim$  i) a
  = (p  $\sim$  j) a for i j
    using funpow_diff[OF bij_is_inj that(1,3)] assms by (simp add: permutation
least_power_dvd)
  moreover have i = j if i  $\leq$  j j < least_power p a and (least_power p a) dvd
(j - i) for i j
    using that le_eq_less_or_eq nat_dvd_not_less by auto
  ultimately have inj_on ( $\lambda i.$  (p  $\sim$  i) a) {.. $\leq$  (least_power p a)}
    unfolding inj_on_def by (metis le_cases lessThan_iff)
  thus ?thesis
    by (simp add: atLeast_upt distinct_map)
qed

```

## 6.6 Decomposition on Cycles

We show that a permutation can be decomposed on cycles

### 6.6.1 Preliminaries

```

lemma support_set:
  assumes permutation p shows set (support p a) = range ( $\lambda i.$  (p  $\sim$  i) a)
proof
  show set (support p a)  $\subseteq$  range ( $\lambda i.$  (p  $\sim$  i) a)
    by auto
  next
    show range ( $\lambda i.$  (p  $\sim$  i) a)  $\subseteq$  set (support p a)
    proof (auto)
      fix i

```

```

    have (p ~ i) a = (p ~ (i mod (least_power p a))) ((p ~ (i - (i mod
(least_power p a)))) a)
    by (metis add_diff_inverse_nat funpow_add mod_less_eq_dividend not_le
o_apply)
    also have ... = (p ~ (i mod (least_power p a))) a
    using least_power_dvd[OF assms] by (metis dvd_minus_mod)
    also have ... ∈ (λi. (p ~ i) a) ‘ {0..< (least_power p a)}
    using least_power_of_permutation(2)[OF assms] by fastforce
    finally show (p ~ i) a ∈ (λi. (p ~ i) a) ‘ {0..< (least_power p a)} .
qed
qed

```

**lemma disjoint\_support:**

**assumes** permutation  $p$  **shows** disjoint (range (λa. set (support p a))) (is disjoint ?A)

**proof** (rule disjointI)

```

{ fix i j a b
  assume set (support p a) ∩ set (support p b) ≠ {} have set (support p a) ⊆
set (support p b)
  unfolding support_set[OF assms]
  proof (auto)
    from ⟨set (support p a) ∩ set (support p b) ≠ {}⟩
    obtain i j where ij: (p ~ i) a = (p ~ j) b
    by auto

```

```

    fix k
    have (p ~ k) a = (p ~ (k + (least_power p a) * l)) a for l
    using least_power_dvd[OF assms] by (induct l) (simp, metis dvd_triv_left
funpow_add o_def)
    then obtain m where m ≥ i and (p ~ m) a = (p ~ k) a
    using least_power_of_permutation(2)[OF assms]
    by (metis dividend_less_times_div le_eq_less_or_eq mult_Suc_right
trans_less_add2)
    hence (p ~ m) a = (p ~ (m - i)) ((p ~ i) a)
    by (metis Nat.le_imp_diff_is_add funpow_add o_apply)
    with ⟨(p ~ m) a = (p ~ k) a⟩ have (p ~ k) a = (p ~ ((m - i) + j)) b
    unfolding ij by (simp add: funpow_add)
    thus (p ~ k) a ∈ range (λi. (p ~ i) b)
    by blast
  qed } note aux_lemma = this

```

```

fix supp_a supp_b
assume supp_a ∈ ?A and supp_b ∈ ?A
then obtain a b where a: supp_a = set (support p a) and b: supp_b = set
(support p b)
by auto
assume supp_a ≠ supp_b thus supp_a ∩ supp_b = {}
using aux_lemma unfolding a b by blast
qed

```

```

lemma disjoint_support':
  assumes permutation p
  shows set (support p a) ∩ set (support p b) = {} ⟷ a ∉ set (support p b)
proof -
  have a ∈ set (support p a)
  using least_power_of_permutation(2)[OF assms] by force
  show ?thesis
proof
  assume set (support p a) ∩ set (support p b) = {}
  with ⟨a ∈ set (support p a)⟩ show a ∉ set (support p b)
    by blast
next
  assume a ∉ set (support p b) show set (support p a) ∩ set (support p b) = {}
proof (rule ccontr)
  assume set (support p a) ∩ set (support p b) ≠ {}
  hence set (support p a) = set (support p b)
    using disjoint_support[OF assms] by (meson UNIV_I disjoint_def image_iff)
  with ⟨a ∈ set (support p a)⟩ and ⟨a ∉ set (support p b)⟩ show False
    by simp
qed
qed
qed

lemma support_coverture:
  assumes permutation p shows ⋃ { set (support p a) | a. p a ≠ a } = { a. p a ≠ a }
proof
  show { a. p a ≠ a } ⊆ ⋃ { set (support p a) | a. p a ≠ a }
proof
  fix a assume a ∈ { a. p a ≠ a }
  have a ∈ set (support p a)
  using least_power_of_permutation(2)[OF assms, of a] by force
  with ⟨a ∈ { a. p a ≠ a }⟩ show a ∈ ⋃ { set (support p a) | a. p a ≠ a }
    by blast
qed
next
  show ⋃ { set (support p a) | a. p a ≠ a } ⊆ { a. p a ≠ a }
proof
  fix b assume b ∈ ⋃ { set (support p a) | a. p a ≠ a }
  then obtain a i where p a ≠ a and (p  $\frown$  i) a = b
    by auto
  have p a = a if (p  $\frown$  i) a = (p  $\frown$  Suc i) a
    using funpow_diff[OF bij_is_inj _ that] assms unfolding permutation by
simp
  with ⟨p a ≠ a⟩ and ⟨(p  $\frown$  i) a = b⟩ show b ∈ { a. p a ≠ a }
    by auto
qed

```

qed

**theorem** *cycle\_restrict*:

**assumes** *permutation p* **and**  $b \in \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)$  **shows**  $p \ b = (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{support } p \ a)) \ b$

**proof** –

**note**  $\text{least\_power\_props } [simp] = \text{least\_power\_of\_permutation}[OF \ \text{assms}(1)]$

**have**  $\text{map } (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{support } p \ a)) (\text{support } p \ a) = \text{rotate1 } (\text{support } p \ a)$

**using** *cyclic\_rotation[OF cycle\_of\_permutation[OF assms(1)], of 1 a]* **by** *simp*

**hence**  $\text{map } (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{support } p \ a)) (\text{support } p \ a) = \text{tl } (\text{support } p \ a) @ [a]$

**by** (*simp add: hd\_map rotate1\_hd\_tl*)

**also have**  $\dots = \text{map } p (\text{support } p \ a)$

**proof** (*rule nth\_equalityI, auto*)

**fix**  $i$  **assume**  $i < \text{least\_power } p \ a$  **show**  $(\text{tl } (\text{support } p \ a) @ [a]) ! i = p \ ((p \ \sim i) \ a)$

**proof** (*cases*)

**assume**  $i = \text{least\_power } p \ a - 1$

**hence**  $(\text{tl } (\text{support } p \ a) @ [a]) ! i = a$

**by** (*metis (no\_types, lifting) diff\_zero length\_map length\_tl length\_upt nth\_append\_length*)

**also have**  $\dots = p \ ((p \ \sim i) \ a)$

**by** (*metis (mono\_tags, opaque\_lifting) least\_power\_props i Suc\_diff\_1 funpow\_simps\_right(2) funpow\_swap1 o\_apply*)

**finally show** *?thesis* .

**next**

**assume**  $i \neq \text{least\_power } p \ a - 1$

**with**  $\langle i < \text{least\_power } p \ a \rangle$  **have**  $i < \text{least\_power } p \ a - 1$

**by** *simp*

**hence**  $(\text{tl } (\text{support } p \ a) @ [a]) ! i = (p \ \sim (\text{Suc } i)) \ a$

**by** (*metis One\_nat\_def Suc\_eq\_plus1 add commute length\_map length\_upt map\_tl nth\_append nth\_map\_upt tl\_upt*)

**thus** *?thesis*

**by** *simp*

qed

qed

**finally have**  $\text{map } (\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{support } p \ a)) (\text{support } p \ a) = \text{map } p (\text{support } p \ a)$  .

**thus** *?thesis*

**using** *assms(2)* **by** *auto*

qed

## 6.6.2 Decomposition

**inductive** *cycle\_decomp* ::  $'a \ \text{set} \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow \text{bool}$

**where**

*empty*:  $\text{cycle\_decomp } \{\} \ \text{id}$

| *comp*:  $\llbracket \text{cycle\_decomp } I \ p; \text{cycle } cs; \text{set } cs \cap I = \{\} \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \text{cycle\_decomp } (\text{set } cs \cup I) ((\text{cycle\_of\_list } cs) \circ p)$

```

lemma semidecomposition:
  assumes  $p$  permutes  $S$  and finite  $S$ 
  shows  $(\lambda y. \text{if } y \in (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)) \text{ then } p \ y \text{ else } y) \text{ permutes } (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a))$ 
proof (rule bij_imp_permutes)
  show  $(\text{if } b \in (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)) \text{ then } p \ b \text{ else } b) = b \text{ if } b \notin S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a) \text{ for } b$ 
    using that by auto
next
  have  $\text{is\_permutation: permutation } p$ 
    using assms unfolding permutation_permutes by blast

  let  $?q = \lambda y. \text{if } y \in (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)) \text{ then } p \ y \text{ else } y$ 
  show  $\text{bij\_betw } ?q \ (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)) \ (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a))$ 
proof (rule bij_betw_imageI)
  show  $\text{inj\_on } ?q \ (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a))$ 
    using permutes_inj[OF assms(1)] unfolding inj_on_def by auto
next
  have  $\text{aux\_lemma: set } (\text{support } p \ s) \subseteq (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)) \text{ if } s \in S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a) \text{ for } s$ 
proof -
  have  $(p \rightsquigarrow i) \ s \in S \text{ for } i$ 
  using that unfolding permutes_in_image[OF permutes_funpow[OF assms(1)]]
by simp
  thus ?thesis
    using that disjoint_support'[OF is_permutation, of  $s \ a$ ] by auto
qed
  have  $(p \rightsquigarrow 1) \ s \in \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s) \text{ for } s$ 
  unfolding support_set[OF is_permutation] by blast
  hence  $p \ s \in \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s) \text{ for } s$ 
  by simp
  hence  $p \ ' (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)) \subseteq S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)$ 
  using aux_lemma by blast
  moreover have  $(p \rightsquigarrow ((\text{least\_power } p \ s) - 1)) \ s \in \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s) \text{ for } s$ 
  unfolding support_set[OF is_permutation] by blast
  hence  $\exists s' \in \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s). \ p \ s' = s \text{ for } s$ 
  using least_power_of_permutation[OF is_permutation] by (metis Suc_diff_1 funpow.simps(2) o_apply)
  hence  $S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a) \subseteq p \ ' (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a))$ 
  using aux_lemma
  by (clarsimp simp add: image_iff) (metis image_subset_iff)
  ultimately show  $?q \ ' (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)) = (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a))$ 
  by auto
qed
qed

```

**theorem cycle\_decomposition:**

```

    assumes  $p$  permutes  $S$  and finite  $S$  shows  $\text{cycle\_decomp } S \ p$ 
    using  $\text{assms}$ 
  proof(induct card  $S$  arbitrary:  $S \ p$  rule:  $\text{less\_induct}$ )
    case  $\text{less}$  show ?case
    proof (cases)
      assume  $S = \{\}$  thus ?thesis
      using  $\text{empty less}(2)$  by auto
    next
      have  $\text{is\_permutation: permutation } p$ 
      using  $\text{less}(2-3)$  unfolding  $\text{permutation\_permutes}$  by blast

      assume  $S \neq \{\}$  then obtain  $s$  where  $s \in S$ 
      by blast
      define  $q$  where  $q = (\lambda y. \text{if } y \in (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s)) \text{ then } p \ y \text{ else } y)$ 
      have  $(\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{support } p \ s) \circ q) = p$ 
      proof
        fix  $a$ 
        consider  $a \in S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s) \mid a \in \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s) \mid a \notin S \mid a \notin \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s)$ 
        by blast
        thus  $((\text{cycle\_of\_list } (\text{support } p \ s) \circ q)) \ a = p \ a$ 
        proof cases
          case 1
          have  $(p \ \sim 1) \ a \in \text{set } (\text{support } p \ a)$ 
          unfolding  $\text{support\_set}[OF \ \text{is\_permutation}]$  by blast
          with  $\langle a \in S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s) \rangle$  have  $p \ a \notin \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s)$ 
          using  $\text{disjoint\_support}'[OF \ \text{is\_permutation}, \text{of } a \ s]$  by auto
          with  $\langle a \in S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s) \rangle$  show ?thesis
          using  $\text{id\_outside\_supp}[of \ \text{support } p \ s]$  unfolding  $q\_def$  by simp
        next
          case 2 thus ?thesis
          using  $\text{cycle\_restrict}[OF \ \text{is\_permutation}]$  unfolding  $q\_def$  by simp
        next
          case 3 thus ?thesis
          using  $\text{id\_outside\_supp}[OF \ 3(2)] \ \text{less}(2) \ \text{permutes\_not\_in}$  unfolding
 $q\_def$  by fastforce
        qed
      qed
    qed

    moreover from  $\langle s \in S \rangle$  have  $(p \ \sim i) \ s \in S$  for  $i$ 
    unfolding  $\text{permutes\_in\_image}[OF \ \text{permutes\_funpow}[OF \ \text{less}(2)]]$  .
    hence  $\text{set } (\text{support } p \ s) \cup (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s)) = S$ 
    by auto

    moreover have  $s \in \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s)$ 
    using  $\text{least\_power\_of\_permutation}[OF \ \text{is\_permutation}]$  by force
    with  $\langle s \in S \rangle$  have  $\text{card } (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s)) < \text{card } S$ 
    using  $\text{less}(3)$  by (metis  $\text{DiffE card\_seteq linorder\_not\_le subsetI}$ )
    hence  $\text{cycle\_decomp } (S - \text{set } (\text{support } p \ s)) \ q$ 

```

```

    using less(1)[OF __ semidecomposition[OF less(2-3)], of s] less(3) unfolding
q_def by blast

    moreover show ?thesis
    using comp[OF calculation(3) cycle_of_permutation[OF is_permutation], of
s]
    unfolding calculation(1-2) by blast
qed
qed
end

```

## 7 Permutations as abstract type

```

theory Perm
  imports
    Transposition
begin

```

This theory introduces basics about permutations, i.e. almost everywhere fix bijections. But it is by no means complete. Grievously missing are cycles since these would require more elaboration, e.g. the concept of distinct lists equivalent under rotation, which maybe would also deserve its own theory. But see theory *src/HOL/ex/Perm\_Fragments.thy* for fragments on that.

### 7.1 Abstract type of permutations

```

typedef 'a perm = {f :: 'a ⇒ 'a. bij f ∧ finite {a. f a ≠ a}}
  morphisms apply Perm
proof
  show id ∈ ?perm by simp
qed

```

```

setup_lifting type_definition_perm

```

```

notation apply (infixl ⟨$⟩ 999)

```

```

lemma bij_apply [simp]:
  bij (apply f)
  using apply [of f] by simp

```

```

lemma perm_eqI:
  assumes  $\bigwedge a. f \langle \$ \rangle a = g \langle \$ \rangle a$ 
  shows  $f = g$ 
  using assms by transfer (simp add: fun_eq_iff)

```

```

lemma perm_eq_iff:
   $f = g \longleftrightarrow (\forall a. f \langle \$ \rangle a = g \langle \$ \rangle a)$ 

```



```

by (auto intro: perm_eqI)

lemma apply_inj:
  f <$> a = f <$> b  $\longleftrightarrow$  a = b
  by (rule inj_eq) (rule bij_is_inj, simp)

lift_definition affected :: 'a perm  $\Rightarrow$  'a set
  is  $\lambda f. \{a. f\ a \neq a\}$  .

lemma in_affected:
  a  $\in$  affected f  $\longleftrightarrow$  f <$> a  $\neq$  a
  by transfer simp

lemma finite_affected [simp]:
  finite (affected f)
  by transfer simp

lemma apply_affected [simp]:
  f <$> a  $\in$  affected f  $\longleftrightarrow$  a  $\in$  affected f
proof transfer
  fix f :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a and a :: 'a
  assume bij f  $\wedge$  finite {b. f b  $\neq$  b}
  then have bij f by simp
  interpret bijection f by standard (rule <bij f>)
  have f a  $\in$  {a. f a = a}  $\longleftrightarrow$  a  $\in$  {a. f a = a} (is ?P  $\longleftrightarrow$  ?Q)
    by auto
  then show f a  $\in$  {a. f a  $\neq$  a}  $\longleftrightarrow$  a  $\in$  {a. f a  $\neq$  a}
    by simp
qed

lemma card_affected_not_one:
  card (affected f)  $\neq$  1
proof
  interpret bijection apply f
    by standard (rule bij_apply)
  assume card (affected f) = 1
  then obtain a where *: affected f = {a}
    by (rule card_1_singletonE)
  then have **: f <$> a  $\neq$  a
    by (simp flip: in_affected)
  with * have f <$> a  $\notin$  affected f
    by simp
  then have f <$> (f <$> a) = f <$> a
    by (simp add: in_affected)
  then have inv (apply f) (f <$> (f <$> a)) = inv (apply f) (f <$> a)
    by simp
  with ** show False by simp
qed

```

## 7.2 Identity, composition and inversion

**instantiation**  $Perm.perm :: (type) \{monoid\_mult, inverse\}$   
**begin**

**lift\_definition**  $one\_perm :: 'a \text{ perm}$   
**is**  $id$   
**by**  $simp$

**lemma**  $apply\_one$   $[simp]$ :  
 $apply\ 1 = id$   
**by**  $(fact\ one\_perm.rep\_eq)$

**lemma**  $affected\_one$   $[simp]$ :  
 $affected\ 1 = \{\}$   
**by**  $transfer\ simp$

**lemma**  $affected\_empty\_iff$   $[simp]$ :  
 $affected\ f = \{\} \longleftrightarrow f = 1$   
**by**  $transfer\ auto$

**lift\_definition**  $times\_perm :: 'a \text{ perm} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ perm} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ perm}$   
**is**  $comp$

**proof**

**fix**  $f\ g :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a$   
**assume**  $bij\ f \wedge finite\ \{a. f\ a \neq a\}$   
 $bij\ g \wedge finite\ \{a. g\ a \neq a\}$   
**then have**  $finite\ (\{a. f\ a \neq a\} \cup \{a. g\ a \neq a\})$   
**by**  $simp$   
**moreover have**  $\{a. (f \circ g)\ a \neq a\} \subseteq \{a. f\ a \neq a\} \cup \{a. g\ a \neq a\}$   
**by**  $auto$   
**ultimately show**  $finite\ \{a. (f \circ g)\ a \neq a\}$   
**by**  $(auto\ intro: finite\_subset)$   
**qed**  $(auto\ intro: bij\_comp)$

**lemma**  $apply\_times$ :  
 $apply\ (f * g) = apply\ f \circ apply\ g$   
**by**  $(fact\ times\_perm.rep\_eq)$

**lemma**  $apply\_sequence$ :  
 $f\ \langle \$ \rangle\ (g\ \langle \$ \rangle\ a) = apply\ (f * g)\ a$   
**by**  $(simp\ add: apply\_times)$

**lemma**  $affected\_times$   $[simp]$ :  
 $affected\ (f * g) \subseteq affected\ f \cup affected\ g$   
**by**  $transfer\ auto$

**lift\_definition**  $inverse\_perm :: 'a \text{ perm} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ perm}$   
**is**  $inv$   
**proof**  $transfer$

```

    fix f :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a and a
    assume bij f  $\wedge$  finite {b. f b  $\neq$  b}
    then have bij f and fin: finite {b. f b  $\neq$  b}
      by auto
    interpret bijection f by standard (rule <bij f>)
    from fin show bij (inv f)  $\wedge$  finite {a. inv f a  $\neq$  a}
      by (simp add: bij_inv)
qed

instance
  by standard (transfer; simp add: comp_assoc)+

end

lemma apply_inverse:
  apply (inverse f) = inv (apply f)
  by (fact inverse_perm.rep_eq)

lemma affected_inverse [simp]:
  affected (inverse f) = affected f
proof transfer
  fix f :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a and a
  assume bij f  $\wedge$  finite {b. f b  $\neq$  b}
  then have bij f by simp
  interpret bijection f by standard (rule <bij f>)
  show {a. inv f a  $\neq$  a} = {a. f a  $\neq$  a}
    by simp
qed

global_interpretation perm: group times 1 :: 'a perm inverse
proof
  fix f :: 'a perm
  show 1 * f = f
    by transfer simp
  show inverse f * f = 1
  proof transfer
    fix f :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a and a
    assume bij f  $\wedge$  finite {b. f b  $\neq$  b}
    then have bij f by simp
    interpret bijection f by standard (rule <bij f>)
    show inv f  $\circ$  f = id
      by simp
    qed
  qed
qed

declare perm.inverse_distrib_swap [simp]

lemma perm_mult_commute:
  assumes affected f  $\cap$  affected g = {}

```

```

shows  $g * f = f * g$ 
proof (rule perm_eqI)
  fix a
  from assms have *:  $a \in \text{affected } f \implies a \notin \text{affected } g$ 
  a  $\in \text{affected } g \implies a \notin \text{affected } f$  for a
  by auto
  consider  $a \in \text{affected } f \wedge a \notin \text{affected } g$ 
     $\wedge f \langle \$ \rangle a \in \text{affected } f$ 
  |  $a \notin \text{affected } f \wedge a \in \text{affected } g$ 
     $\wedge f \langle \$ \rangle a \notin \text{affected } f$ 
  |  $a \notin \text{affected } f \wedge a \notin \text{affected } g$ 
  using assms by auto
  then show  $(g * f) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f * g) \langle \$ \rangle a$ 
proof cases
  case 1
  with * have  $f \langle \$ \rangle a \notin \text{affected } g$ 
  by auto
  with 1 show ?thesis by (simp add: in_affected apply_times)
next
  case 2
  with * have  $g \langle \$ \rangle a \notin \text{affected } f$ 
  by auto
  with 2 show ?thesis by (simp add: in_affected apply_times)
next
  case 3
  then show ?thesis by (simp add: in_affected apply_times)
qed
qed

```

```

lemma apply_power:
   $\text{apply } (f \wedge n) = \text{apply } f \wedge n$ 
  by (induct n) (simp_all add: apply_times)

```

```

lemma perm_power_inverse:
   $\text{inverse } f \wedge n = \text{inverse } ((f :: 'a \text{ perm}) \wedge n)$ 
proof (induct n)
  case 0 then show ?case by simp
next
  case (Suc n)
  then show ?case
    unfolding power_Suc2 [of f] by simp
qed

```

### 7.3 Orbit and order of elements

```

definition orbit :: ' $a \text{ perm} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set}$ '
where
   $\text{orbit } f \ a = \text{range } (\lambda n. (f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a)$ 

```

```

lemma in_orbitI:
  assumes  $(f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a = b$ 
  shows  $b \in \text{orbit } f \ a$ 
  using assms by (auto simp add: orbit_def)

lemma apply_power_self_in_orbit [simp]:
   $(f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a \in \text{orbit } f \ a$ 
  by (rule in_orbitI) rule

lemma in_orbit_self [simp]:
   $a \in \text{orbit } f \ a$ 
  using apply_power_self_in_orbit [of  $\_ 0$ ] by simp

lemma apply_self_in_orbit [simp]:
   $f \langle \$ \rangle a \in \text{orbit } f \ a$ 
  using apply_power_self_in_orbit [of  $\_ 1$ ] by simp

lemma orbit_not_empty [simp]:
   $\text{orbit } f \ a \neq \{\}$ 
  using in_orbit_self [of  $a \ f$ ] by blast

lemma not_in_affected_iff_orbit_eq_singleton:
   $a \notin \text{affected } f \longleftrightarrow \text{orbit } f \ a = \{a\}$  (is  $?P \longleftrightarrow ?Q$ )
proof
  assume  $?P$ 
  then have  $f \langle \$ \rangle a = a$ 
    by (simp add: in_affected)
  then have  $(f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a = a$  for  $n$ 
    by (induct n) (simp_all add: apply_times)
  then show  $?Q$ 
    by (auto simp add: orbit_def)
next
  assume  $?Q$ 
  then show  $?P$ 
    by (auto simp add: orbit_def in_affected dest: range_eq_singletonD [of  $\_ 1$ ])
qed

definition order ::  $'a \text{ perm} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow \text{nat}$ 
where
   $\text{order } f = \text{card} \circ \text{orbit } f$ 

lemma orbit_subset_eq_affected:
  assumes  $a \in \text{affected } f$ 
  shows  $\text{orbit } f \ a \subseteq \text{affected } f$ 
proof (rule ccontr)
  assume  $\neg \text{orbit } f \ a \subseteq \text{affected } f$ 
  then obtain  $b$  where  $b \in \text{orbit } f \ a$  and  $b \notin \text{affected } f$ 
    by auto

```

```

then have  $b \in \text{range } (\lambda n. (f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a)$ 
  by (simp add: orbit_def)
then obtain  $n$  where  $b = (f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a$ 
  by blast
with  $\langle b \notin \text{affected } f \rangle$ 
have  $(f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a \notin \text{affected } f$ 
  by simp
then have  $f \langle \$ \rangle a \notin \text{affected } f$ 
  by (induct n) (simp_all add: apply_times)
with assms show False
  by simp
qed

lemma finite_orbit [simp]:
  finite (orbit f a)
proof (cases a \in affected f)
  case False then show ?thesis
    by (simp add: not_in_affected_iff_orbit_eq_singleton)
next
  case True then have  $\text{orbit } f \ a \subseteq \text{affected } f$ 
    by (rule orbit_subset_eq_affected)
  then show ?thesis using finite_affected
    by (rule finite_subset)
qed

lemma orbit_1 [simp]:
   $\text{orbit } 1 \ a = \{a\}$ 
  by (auto simp add: orbit_def)

lemma order_1 [simp]:
   $\text{order } 1 \ a = 1$ 
  unfolding order_def by simp

lemma card_orbit_eq [simp]:
   $\text{card } (\text{orbit } f \ a) = \text{order } f \ a$ 
  by (simp add: order_def)

lemma order_greater_zero [simp]:
   $\text{order } f \ a > 0$ 
  by (simp only: card_gt_0_iff order_def comp_def) simp

lemma order_eq_one_iff:
   $\text{order } f \ a = \text{Suc } 0 \longleftrightarrow a \notin \text{affected } f$  (is  $?P \longleftrightarrow ?Q$ )
proof
  assume  $?P$  then have  $\text{card } (\text{orbit } f \ a) = 1$ 
    by simp
  then obtain  $b$  where  $\text{orbit } f \ a = \{b\}$ 
    by (rule card_1_singletonE)
  with in_orbit_self [of a f]

```

```

    have  $b = a$  by simp
  with  $\langle \text{orbit } f \ a = \{b\} \rangle$  show  $?Q$ 
    by (simp add: not_in_affected_iff_orbit_eq_singleton)
next
  assume  $?Q$ 
  then have  $\text{orbit } f \ a = \{a\}$ 
    by (simp add: not_in_affected_iff_orbit_eq_singleton)
  then have  $\text{card } (\text{orbit } f \ a) = 1$ 
    by simp
  then show  $?P$ 
    by simp
qed

```

```

lemma order_greater_eq_two_iff:
   $\text{order } f \ a \geq 2 \iff a \in \text{affected } f$ 
  using order_eq_one_iff [of  $f \ a$ ]
  apply (auto simp add: neq_iff)
  using order_greater_zero [of  $f \ a$ ]
  apply simp
done

```

```

lemma order_less_eq_affected:
  assumes  $f \neq 1$ 
  shows  $\text{order } f \ a \leq \text{card } (\text{affected } f)$ 
proof (cases  $a \in \text{affected } f$ )
  from assms have  $\text{affected } f \neq \{\}$ 
    by simp
  then obtain  $B \ b$  where  $\text{affected } f = \text{insert } b \ B$ 
    by blast
  with finite_affected [of  $f$ ] have  $\text{card } (\text{affected } f) \geq 1$ 
    by (simp add: card.insert_remove)
  case False then have  $\text{order } f \ a = 1$ 
    by (simp add: order_eq_one_iff)
  with  $\langle \text{card } (\text{affected } f) \geq 1 \rangle$  show  $?thesis$ 
    by simp
next
  case True
  have  $\text{card } (\text{orbit } f \ a) \leq \text{card } (\text{affected } f)$ 
    by (rule card_mono) (simp_all add: True orbit_subset_eq_affected card_mono)
  then show  $?thesis$ 
    by simp
qed

```

```

lemma affected_order_greater_eq_two:
  assumes  $a \in \text{affected } f$ 
  shows  $\text{order } f \ a \geq 2$ 
proof (rule ccontr)
  assume  $\neg 2 \leq \text{order } f \ a$ 
  then have  $\text{order } f \ a < 2$ 

```

```

    by (simp add: not_le)
  with order_greater_zero [of f a] have order f a = 1
    by arith
  with assms show False
    by (simp add: order_eq_one_iff)
qed

lemma order_witness_unfold:
  assumes  $n > 0$  and  $(f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a = a$ 
  shows  $\text{order } f a = \text{card } ((\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) ' \{0..<n\})$ 
proof -
  have  $\text{orbit } f a = (\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) ' \{0..<n\}$  (is _ = ?B)
  proof (rule set_eqI, rule)
    fix b
    assume  $b \in \text{orbit } f a$ 
    then obtain m where  $(f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a = b$ 
      by (auto simp add: orbit_def)
    then have  $b = (f \wedge (m \bmod n + n * (m \text{ div } n))) \langle \$ \rangle a$ 
      by simp
    also have  $\dots = (f \wedge (m \bmod n)) \langle \$ \rangle ((f \wedge (n * (m \text{ div } n))) \langle \$ \rangle a)$ 
      by (simp only: power_add apply_times) simp
    also have  $(f \wedge (n * q)) \langle \$ \rangle a = a$  for q
      by (induct q)
        (simp_all add: power_add apply_times assms)
    finally have  $b = (f \wedge (m \bmod n)) \langle \$ \rangle a$  .
    moreover from  $\langle n > 0 \rangle$ 
    have  $m \bmod n < n$ 
      by simp
    ultimately show  $b \in ?B$ 
      by auto
  next
    fix b
    assume  $b \in ?B$ 
    then obtain m where  $(f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a = b$ 
      by blast
    then show  $b \in \text{orbit } f a$ 
      by (rule in_orbitI)
  qed
  then have  $\text{card } (\text{orbit } f a) = \text{card } ?B$ 
    by (simp only:)
  then show ?thesis
    by simp
qed

lemma inj_on_apply_range:
   $\text{inj\_on } (\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) \{..<\text{order } f a\}$ 
proof -
  have  $\text{inj\_on } (\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) \{..<n\}$ 
    if  $n \leq \text{order } f a$  for n

```



```

using that proof (induct n)
  case 0 then show ?case by simp
next
  case (Suc n)
  then have prem:  $n < \text{order } f \ a$ 
  by simp
  with Suc.hyps have hyp:  $\text{inj\_on } (\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) \{..<n\}$ 
  by simp
  have  $(f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a \notin (\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) ' \{..<n\}$ 
  proof
    assume  $(f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a \in (\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) ' \{..<n\}$ 
    then obtain m where *:  $(f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a$  and  $m < n$ 
    by auto
    interpret bijection apply  $(f \wedge m)$ 
    by standard simp
    from  $\langle m < n \rangle$  have  $n = m + (n - m)$ 
    and nm:  $0 < n - m$   $n - m \leq n$ 
    by arith+
    with * have  $(f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge (m + (n - m))) \langle \$ \rangle a$ 
    by simp
    then have  $(f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle ((f \wedge (n - m)) \langle \$ \rangle a)$ 
    by (simp add: power_add apply_times)
    then have  $(f \wedge (n - m)) \langle \$ \rangle a = a$ 
    by simp
    with  $\langle n - m > 0 \rangle$ 
    have  $\text{order } f \ a = \text{card } ((\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) ' \{0..<n - m\})$ 
    by (rule order_witness_unfold)
    also have  $\text{card } ((\lambda m. (f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a) ' \{0..<n - m\}) \leq \text{card } \{0..<n - m\}$ 
    by (rule card_image_le) simp
    finally have  $\text{order } f \ a \leq n - m$ 
    by simp
    with prem show False by simp
  qed
  with hyp show ?case
  by (simp add: lessThan_Suc)
qed
then show ?thesis by simp
qed

lemma orbit_unfold_image:
   $\text{orbit } f \ a = (\lambda n. (f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a) ' \{..<\text{order } f \ a\}$  (is _ = ?A)
proof (rule sym, rule card_subset_eq)
  show finite (orbit f a)
  by simp
  show ?A  $\subseteq$  orbit f a
  by (auto simp add: orbit_def)
  from inj_on_apply_range [of f a]
  have card ?A = order f a
  by (auto simp add: card_image)

```

```

    then show  $\text{card } ?A = \text{card } (\text{orbit } f \ a)$ 
      by simp
qed

lemma in_orbitE:
  assumes  $b \in \text{orbit } f \ a$ 
  obtains  $n$  where  $b = (f \wedge n) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a$  and  $n < \text{order } f \ a$ 
  using assms unfolding orbit_unfold_image by blast

lemma apply_power_order [simp]:
   $(f \wedge \text{order } f \ a) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a = a$ 
proof -
  have  $(f \wedge \text{order } f \ a) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a \in \text{orbit } f \ a$ 
    by simp
  then obtain  $n$  where
    *:  $(f \wedge \text{order } f \ a) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a = (f \wedge n) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a$ 
    and  $n < \text{order } f \ a$ 
    by (rule in_orbitE)
  show ?thesis
  proof (cases  $n$ )
    case 0 with * show ?thesis by simp
  next
    case (Suc  $m$ )
    from order_greater_zero [of  $f \ a$ ]
      have  $\text{Suc } (\text{order } f \ a - 1) = \text{order } f \ a$ 
      by arith
    from  $\text{Suc } \langle n < \text{order } f \ a \rangle$ 
      have  $m < \text{order } f \ a$ 
      by simp
    with Suc *
      have  $(\text{inverse } f) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ ((f \wedge \text{Suc } (\text{order } f \ a - 1)) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a) =$ 
         $(\text{inverse } f) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ ((f \wedge \text{Suc } m) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a)$ 
      by simp
    then have  $(f \wedge (\text{order } f \ a - 1)) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a =$ 
       $(f \wedge m) \ \langle \$ \rangle \ a$ 
      by (simp only: power_Suc apply_times)
      (simp add: apply_sequence mult.assoc [symmetric])
    with inj_on_apply_range
      have  $\text{order } f \ a - 1 = m$ 
      by (rule inj_onD)
      (simp_all add:  $\langle m < \text{order } f \ a \rangle$ )
    with Suc have  $n = \text{order } f \ a$ 
      by auto
    with  $\langle n < \text{order } f \ a \rangle$ 
      show ?thesis by simp
  qed
qed

lemma apply_power_left_mult_order [simp]:

```

$(f \wedge (n * \text{order } f \ a)) \langle \$ \rangle a = a$   
**by** (*induct* *n*) (*simp\_all* *add: power\_add apply\_times*)

**lemma** *apply\_power\_right\_mult\_order* [*simp*]:  
 $(f \wedge (\text{order } f \ a * n)) \langle \$ \rangle a = a$   
**by** (*simp* *add: ac\_simps*)

**lemma** *apply\_power\_mod\_order\_eq* [*simp*]:  
 $(f \wedge (n \bmod \text{order } f \ a)) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $(f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge (n \bmod \text{order } f \ a + \text{order } f \ a * (n \text{ div } \text{order } f \ a))) \langle \$ \rangle a$   
**by** *simp*  
**also have**  $\dots = (f \wedge (n \bmod \text{order } f \ a) * f \wedge (\text{order } f \ a * (n \text{ div } \text{order } f \ a))) \langle \$ \rangle a$   
**by** (*simp flip: power\_add*)  
**finally show** *?thesis*  
**by** (*simp* *add: apply\_times*)

**qed**

**lemma** *apply\_power\_eq\_iff*:  
 $(f \wedge m) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge n) \langle \$ \rangle a \longleftrightarrow m \bmod \text{order } f \ a = n \bmod \text{order } f \ a$  (**is** *?P*  
 $\longleftrightarrow ?Q$ )  
**proof**  
**assume** *?Q*  
**then have**  $(f \wedge (m \bmod \text{order } f \ a)) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge (n \bmod \text{order } f \ a)) \langle \$ \rangle a$   
**by** *simp*  
**then show** *?P*  
**by** *simp*  
**next**  
**assume** *?P*  
**then have**  $(f \wedge (m \bmod \text{order } f \ a)) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge (n \bmod \text{order } f \ a)) \langle \$ \rangle a$   
**by** *simp*  
**with** *inj\_on\_apply\_range*  
**show** *?Q*  
**by** (*rule inj\_onD*) *simp\_all*

**qed**

**lemma** *apply\_inverse\_eq\_apply\_power\_order\_minus\_one*:  
 $(\text{inverse } f) \langle \$ \rangle a = (f \wedge (\text{order } f \ a - 1)) \langle \$ \rangle a$   
**proof** (*cases* *order f a*)  
**case** 0 **with** *order\_greater\_zero* [*of f a*] **show** *?thesis*  
**by** *simp*  
**next**  
**case** (*Suc n*)  
**moreover have**  $(f \wedge \text{order } f \ a) \langle \$ \rangle a = a$   
**by** *simp*  
**then have** \*:  $(\text{inverse } f) \langle \$ \rangle ((f \wedge \text{order } f \ a) \langle \$ \rangle a) = (\text{inverse } f) \langle \$ \rangle a$   
**by** *simp*  
**ultimately show** *?thesis*  
**by** (*simp* *add: apply\_sequence mult.assoc* [*symmetric*])

qed

**lemma** *apply\_inverse\_self\_in\_orbit* [simp]:

(inverse f)  $\langle \$ \rangle$  a  $\in$  orbit f a

**using** *apply\_inverse\_eq\_apply\_power\_order\_minus\_one* [symmetric]

**by** (rule in\_orbitI)

**lemma** *apply\_inverse\_power\_eq*:

(inverse (f  $\wedge$  n))  $\langle \$ \rangle$  a = (f  $\wedge$  (order f a - n mod order f a))  $\langle \$ \rangle$  a

**proof** (induct n)

**case** 0 **then show** ?case **by** simp

**next**

**case** (Suc n)

**define** m **where** m = order f a - n mod order f a - 1

**moreover have** order f a - n mod order f a > 0

**by** simp

**ultimately have** \*: order f a - n mod order f a = Suc m

**by** arith

**moreover from** \* **have** m2: order f a - Suc n mod order f a = (if m = 0 then order f a else m)

**by** (auto simp add: mod\_Suc)

**ultimately show** ?case

**using** Suc

**by** (simp\_all add: apply\_times power\_Suc2 [of \_ n] power\_Suc [of \_ m] del: power\_Suc)

(simp add: apply\_sequence mult.assoc [symmetric])

qed

**lemma** *apply\_power\_eq\_self\_iff*:

(f  $\wedge$  n)  $\langle \$ \rangle$  a = a  $\longleftrightarrow$  order f a dvd n

**using** *apply\_power\_eq\_iff* [of f n a 0]

**by** (simp add: mod\_eq\_0\_iff\_dvd)

**lemma** *orbit\_equiv*:

**assumes** b  $\in$  orbit f a

**shows** orbit f b = orbit f a (**is** ?B = ?A)

**proof**

**from** assms **obtain** n **where** n < order f a **and** b = (f  $\wedge$  n)  $\langle \$ \rangle$  a

**by** (rule in\_orbitE)

**then show** ?B  $\subseteq$  ?A

**by** (auto simp add: apply\_sequence power\_add [symmetric] intro: in\_orbitI elim!: in\_orbitE)

**from** b **have** (inverse (f  $\wedge$  n))  $\langle \$ \rangle$  b = (inverse (f  $\wedge$  n))  $\langle \$ \rangle$  ((f  $\wedge$  n)  $\langle \$ \rangle$  a)

**by** simp

**then have** a: a = (inverse (f  $\wedge$  n))  $\langle \$ \rangle$  b

**by** (simp add: apply\_sequence)

**then show** ?A  $\subseteq$  ?B

**apply** (auto simp add: apply\_sequence power\_add [symmetric] intro: in\_orbitI elim!: in\_orbitE)

```

    unfolding apply_times comp_def apply_inverse_power_eq
    unfolding apply_sequence power_add [symmetric]
    apply (rule in_orbitI) apply rule
    done
qed

lemma orbit_apply [simp]:
  orbit f (f ⟨$⟩ a) = orbit f a
  by (rule orbit_equiv) simp

lemma order_apply [simp]:
  order f (f ⟨$⟩ a) = order f a
  by (simp only: order_def comp_def orbit_apply)

lemma orbit_apply_inverse [simp]:
  orbit f (inverse f ⟨$⟩ a) = orbit f a
  by (rule orbit_equiv) simp

lemma order_apply_inverse [simp]:
  order f (inverse f ⟨$⟩ a) = order f a
  by (simp only: order_def comp_def orbit_apply_inverse)

lemma orbit_apply_power [simp]:
  orbit f ((f ^ n) ⟨$⟩ a) = orbit f a
  by (rule orbit_equiv) simp

lemma order_apply_power [simp]:
  order f ((f ^ n) ⟨$⟩ a) = order f a
  by (simp only: order_def comp_def orbit_apply_power)

lemma orbit_inverse [simp]:
  orbit (inverse f) = orbit f
proof (rule ext, rule set_eqI, rule)
  fix b a
  assume b ∈ orbit f a
  then obtain n where b: b = (f ^ n) ⟨$⟩ a n < order f a
    by (rule in_orbitE)
  then have b = apply (inverse (inverse f) ^ n) a
    by simp
  then have b = apply (inverse (inverse f ^ n)) a
    by (simp add: perm_power_inverse)
  then have b = apply (inverse f ^ (n * (order (inverse f ^ n) a - 1))) a
    by (simp add: apply_inverse_eq apply_power_order_minus_one power_mult)
  then show b ∈ orbit (inverse f) a
    by simp
next
  fix b a
  assume b ∈ orbit (inverse f) a
  then show b ∈ orbit f a

```

```

    by (rule in_orbitE)
      (simp add: apply_inverse_eq apply_power_order_minus_one
        perm_power_inverse power_mult [symmetric])
qed

lemma order_inverse [simp]:
  order (inverse f) = order f
  by (simp add: order_def)

lemma orbit_disjoint:
  assumes orbit f a  $\neq$  orbit f b
  shows orbit f a  $\cap$  orbit f b = {}
proof (rule ccontr)
  assume orbit f a  $\cap$  orbit f b  $\neq$  {}
  then obtain c where c  $\in$  orbit f a  $\cap$  orbit f b
    by blast
  then have c  $\in$  orbit f a and c  $\in$  orbit f b
    by auto
  then obtain m n where c = (f ^ m) <$> a
    and c = apply (f ^ n) b by (blast elim!: in_orbitE)
  then have (f ^ m) <$> a = apply (f ^ n) b
    by simp
  then have apply (inverse f ^ m) ((f ^ m) <$> a) =
    apply (inverse f ^ m) (apply (f ^ n) b)
    by simp
  then have *: apply (inverse f ^ m * f ^ n) b = a
    by (simp add: apply_sequence perm_power_inverse)
  have a  $\in$  orbit f b
proof (cases n m rule: linorder_cases)
  case equal with * show ?thesis
    by (simp add: perm_power_inverse)
next
  case less
  moreover define q where q = m - n
  ultimately have m = q + n by arith
  with * have apply (inverse f ^ q) b = a
    by (simp add: power_add mult.assoc perm_power_inverse)
  then have a  $\in$  orbit (inverse f) b
    by (rule in_orbitI)
  then show ?thesis
    by simp
next
  case greater
  moreover define q where q = n - m
  ultimately have n = m + q by arith
  with * have apply (f ^ q) b = a
    by (simp add: power_add mult.assoc [symmetric] perm_power_inverse)
  then show ?thesis
    by (rule in_orbitI)

```

```

qed
with assms show False
  by (auto dest: orbit_equiv)
qed

```

## 7.4 Swaps

```

lift_definition swap :: 'a ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'a perm (⟨⟨_ ↔ _⟩⟩)
  is λa b. transpose a b
proof
  fix a b :: 'a
  have {c. transpose a b c ≠ c} ⊆ {a, b}
    by (auto simp add: transpose_def)
  then show finite {c. transpose a b c ≠ c}
    by (rule finite_subset) simp
qed simp

```

```

lemma apply_swap_simp [simp]:
  ⟨a ↔ b⟩ ⟨$⟩ a = b
  ⟨a ↔ b⟩ ⟨$⟩ b = a
  by (transfer; simp)+

```

```

lemma apply_swap_same [simp]:
  c ≠ a ⟹ c ≠ b ⟹ ⟨a ↔ b⟩ ⟨$⟩ c = c
  by transfer simp

```

```

lemma apply_swap_eq_iff [simp]:
  ⟨a ↔ b⟩ ⟨$⟩ c = a ⟷ c = b
  ⟨a ↔ b⟩ ⟨$⟩ c = b ⟷ c = a
  by (transfer; auto simp add: transpose_def)+

```

```

lemma swap_1 [simp]:
  ⟨a ↔ a⟩ = 1
  by transfer simp

```

```

lemma swap_sym:
  ⟨b ↔ a⟩ = ⟨a ↔ b⟩
  by (transfer; auto simp add: transpose_def)+

```

```

lemma swap_self [simp]:
  ⟨a ↔ b⟩ * ⟨a ↔ b⟩ = 1
  by transfer simp

```

```

lemma affected_swap:
  a ≠ b ⟹ affected ⟨a ↔ b⟩ = {a, b}
  by transfer (auto simp add: transpose_def)

```

```

lemma inverse_swap [simp]:
  inverse ⟨a ↔ b⟩ = ⟨a ↔ b⟩

```

by transfer (auto intro: inv\_equality)

## 7.5 Permutations specified by cycles

```

fun cycle :: 'a list  $\Rightarrow$  'a perm ( $\langle \_ \rangle$ )
where
   $\langle [] \rangle = 1$ 
|  $\langle [a] \rangle = 1$ 
|  $\langle a \# b \# as \rangle = \langle a \# as \rangle * \langle a \leftrightarrow b \rangle$ 

```

We do not continue and restrict ourselves to syntax from here. See also introductory note.

## 7.6 Syntax

```

bundle permutation_syntax
begin
  notation swap ( $\langle \_ \leftrightarrow \_ \rangle$ )
  notation cycle ( $\langle \_ \rangle$ )
  notation apply (infixl  $\langle \$ \rangle$  999)
end

unbundle no_permutation_syntax

end

```

## 8 Permutation orbits

```

theory Orbits
imports
  HOL-Library.FuncSet
  HOL-Combinatorics.Permutations
begin

```

### 8.1 Orbits and cyclic permutations

```

inductive_set orbit :: ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'a)  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a set for f x where
  base: f x  $\in$  orbit f x |
  step: y  $\in$  orbit f x  $\Longrightarrow$  f y  $\in$  orbit f x

```

```

definition cyclic_on :: ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'a)  $\Rightarrow$  'a set  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  cyclic_on f S  $\longleftrightarrow (\exists s \in S. S = \text{orbit } f s)$ 

```

```

lemma orbit_altdef: orbit f x = {(f  $\frown$  n) x | n. 0 < n} (is ?L = ?R)

```

```

proof (intro set_eqI iffI)

```

```

  fix y assume y  $\in$  ?L then show y  $\in$  ?R

```

```

    by (induct rule: orbit.induct) (auto simp: exI[where x=1] exI[where x=Suc
n for n])
  next

```



```

fix y assume y ∈ ?R
then obtain n where y = (f  $\sim$  n) x 0 < n by blast
then show y ∈ ?L
proof (induction n arbitrary: y)
  case (Suc n) then show ?case by (cases n = 0) (auto intro: orbit.intros)
qed simp
qed

```

```

lemma orbit_trans:
  assumes s ∈ orbit f t t ∈ orbit f u shows s ∈ orbit f u
  using assms by induct (auto intro: orbit.intros)

```

```

lemma orbit_subset:
  assumes s ∈ orbit f (f t) shows s ∈ orbit f t
  using assms by (induct) (auto intro: orbit.intros)

```

```

lemma orbit_sim_step:
  assumes s ∈ orbit f t shows f s ∈ orbit f (f t)
  using assms by induct (auto intro: orbit.intros)

```

```

lemma orbit_step:
  assumes y ∈ orbit f x f x ≠ y shows y ∈ orbit f (f x)
  using assms
proof induction
  case (step y) then show ?case by (cases x = y) (auto intro: orbit.intros)
qed simp

```

```

lemma self_in_orbit_trans:
  assumes s ∈ orbit f s t ∈ orbit f s shows t ∈ orbit f t
  using assms(2,1) by induct (auto intro: orbit_sim_step)

```

```

lemma orbit_swap:
  assumes s ∈ orbit f s t ∈ orbit f s shows s ∈ orbit f t
  using assms(2,1)
proof induction
  case base then show ?case by (cases f s = s) (auto intro: orbit_step)
next
  case (step x) then show ?case by (cases f x = s) (auto intro: orbit_step)
qed

```

```

lemma permutation_self_in_orbit:
  assumes permutation f shows s ∈ orbit f s
  unfolding orbit_altdef using permutation_self[OF assms, of s] by simp metis

```

```

lemma orbit_altdef_self_in:
  assumes s ∈ orbit f s shows orbit f s = {(f  $\sim$  n) s | n. True}
proof (intro set_eqI iffI)
  fix x assume x ∈ {(f  $\sim$  n) s | n. True}
  then obtain n where x = (f  $\sim$  n) s by auto

```

**then show**  $x \in \text{orbit } f \ s$  **using** *assms* **by** (*cases*  $n = 0$ ) (*auto simp: orbit\_altdef*)  
**qed** (*auto simp: orbit\_altdef*)

**lemma** *orbit\_altdef\_permutation*:

**assumes** *permutation f* **shows**  $\text{orbit } f \ s = \{(f \ \frown \ n) \ s \mid n. \text{True}\}$

**using** *assms* **by** (*intro orbit\_altdef\_self\_in permutation\_self\_in\_orbit*)

**lemma** *orbit\_altdef\_bounded*:

**assumes**  $(f \ \frown \ n) \ s = s \ 0 < n$  **shows**  $\text{orbit } f \ s = \{(f \ \frown \ m) \ s \mid m. m < n\}$

**proof** –

**from** *assms* **have**  $s \in \text{orbit } f \ s$

**by** (*auto simp add: orbit\_altdef*) *metis*

**then have**  $\text{orbit } f \ s = \{(f \ \frown \ m) \ s \mid m. \text{True}\}$  **by** (*rule orbit\_altdef\_self\_in*)

**also have**  $\dots = \{(f \ \frown \ m) \ s \mid m. m < n\}$

**using** *assms*

**by** (*auto simp: funpow\_mod\_eq intro: exI[where  $x=m \bmod n$  for  $m$ ]*)

**finally show** *?thesis* .

**qed**

**lemma** *funpow\_in\_orbit*:

**assumes**  $s \in \text{orbit } f \ t$  **shows**  $(f \ \frown \ n) \ s \in \text{orbit } f \ t$

**using** *assms* **by** (*induct n*) (*auto intro: orbit.intros*)

**lemma** *finite\_orbit*:

**assumes**  $s \in \text{orbit } f \ s$  **shows** *finite* ( $\text{orbit } f \ s$ )

**proof** –

**from** *assms* **obtain**  $n$  **where**  $n: 0 < n \ (f \ \frown \ n) \ s = s$

**by** (*auto simp: orbit\_altdef*)

**then show** *?thesis* **by** (*auto simp: orbit\_altdef\_bounded*)

**qed**

**lemma** *self\_in\_orbit\_step*:

**assumes**  $s \in \text{orbit } f \ s$  **shows**  $\text{orbit } f \ (f \ s) = \text{orbit } f \ s$

**proof** (*intro set\_eqI iffI*)

**fix**  $t$  **assume**  $t \in \text{orbit } f \ s$  **then show**  $t \in \text{orbit } f \ (f \ s)$

**using** *assms* **by** (*auto intro: orbit\_step orbit\_sim\_step*)

**qed** (*auto intro: orbit\_subset*)

**lemma** *permutation\_orbit\_step*:

**assumes** *permutation f* **shows**  $\text{orbit } f \ (f \ s) = \text{orbit } f \ s$

**using** *assms* **by** (*intro self\_in\_orbit\_step permutation\_self\_in\_orbit*)

**lemma** *orbit\_nonempty*:

$\text{orbit } f \ s \neq \{\}$

**using** *orbit.base* **by** *fastforce*

**lemma** *orbit\_inv\_eq*:

**assumes** *permutation f*

**shows**  $\text{orbit } (\text{inv } f) \ x = \text{orbit } f \ x$  (**is**  $?L = ?R$ )

```

proof -
{ fix  $g\ y$  assume  $A: \text{permutation } g\ y \in \text{orbit } (\text{inv } g)\ x$ 
  have  $y \in \text{orbit } g\ x$ 
  proof -
    have  $\text{inv\_}g: \bigwedge y. x = g\ y \implies \text{inv } g\ x = y \bigwedge y. \text{inv } g\ (g\ y) = y$ 
    by (metis  $A(1)$  bij_inv_eq_iff_permutation_bijective) +

    { fix  $y$  assume  $y \in \text{orbit } g\ x$ 
      then have  $\text{inv } g\ y \in \text{orbit } g\ x$ 
      by (cases) (simp_all add: inv_g A(1) permutation_self_in_orbit)
    } note  $\text{inv\_}g\ \text{in\_orb} = \text{this}$ 

    from  $A(2)$  show ?thesis
    by induct (simp_all add: inv_g_in_orb A permutation_self_in_orbit)
  qed
} note  $\text{orb\_inv\_ss} = \text{this}$ 

have  $\text{inv } (\text{inv } f) = f$ 
by (simp add: assms inv_inv_eq_permutation_bijective)
then show ?thesis
using  $\text{orb\_inv\_ss}[OF\ \text{assms}]$   $\text{orb\_inv\_ss}[OF\ \text{permutation\_inverse}[OF\ \text{assms}]]$ 
by auto
qed

lemma cyclic_on_alldef:
 $\text{cyclic\_on } f\ S \longleftrightarrow S \neq \{\} \wedge (\forall s \in S. S = \text{orbit } f\ s)$ 
unfolding cyclic_on_def by (auto intro: orbit.step orbit_swap orbit_trans)

lemma cyclic_on_funpow_in:
assumes  $\text{cyclic\_on } f\ S\ s \in S$  shows  $(f^{\sim n})\ s \in S$ 
using assms unfolding cyclic_on_def by (auto intro: funpow_in_orbit)

lemma finite_cyclic_on:
assumes  $\text{cyclic\_on } f\ S$  shows finite  $S$ 
using assms by (auto simp: cyclic_on_def finite_orbit)

lemma cyclic_on_singleI:
assumes  $s \in S\ S = \text{orbit } f\ s$  shows  $\text{cyclic\_on } f\ S$ 
using assms unfolding cyclic_on_def by blast

lemma cyclic_on_inI:
assumes  $\text{cyclic\_on } f\ S\ s \in S$  shows  $f\ s \in S$ 
using assms by (auto simp: cyclic_on_def intro: orbit.intros)

lemma orbit_inverse:
assumes self:  $a \in \text{orbit } g\ a$ 
and eq:  $\bigwedge x. x \in \text{orbit } g\ a \implies g'\ (f\ x) = f\ (g\ x)$ 
shows  $f\ ' \text{orbit } g\ a = \text{orbit } g'\ (f\ a)$  (is ?L = ?R)
proof (intro set_eqI iffI)

```

```

fix  $x$  assume  $x \in ?L$ 
then obtain  $x0$  where  $x0 \in \text{orbit } g \text{ a } x = f \ x0$  by auto
then show  $x \in ?R$ 
proof (induct arbitrary: x)
  case base then show  $?case$  by (auto simp: self orbit.base eq[symmetric])
next
  case step then show  $?case$  by cases (auto simp: eq[symmetric] orbit.intros)
qed
next
  fix  $x$  assume  $x \in ?R$ 
then show  $x \in ?L$ 
proof (induct arbitrary: x)
  case base then show  $?case$  by (auto simp: self orbit.base eq)
next
  case step then show  $?case$  by cases (auto simp: eq orbit.intros)
qed
qed

lemma cyclic_on_image:
  assumes cyclic_on f S
  assumes  $\bigwedge x. x \in S \implies g \ (h \ x) = h \ (f \ x)$ 
  shows cyclic_on g (h ` S)
  using assms by (auto simp: cyclic_on_def) (meson orbit_inverse)

lemma cyclic_on_f_in:
  assumes f permutes S cyclic_on f A f x ∈ A
  shows  $x \in A$ 
proof –
  from assms have  $fx\_in\_orb: f \ x \in \text{orbit } f \ (f \ x)$  by (auto simp: cyclic_on_alldef)
  from assms have  $A = \text{orbit } f \ (f \ x)$  by (auto simp: cyclic_on_alldef)
  moreover
  then have  $\dots = \text{orbit } f \ x$  using  $\langle f \ x \in A \rangle$  by (auto intro: orbit_step orbit_subset)
  ultimately
  show  $?thesis$  by (metis (no_types) orbit.simps permutes_inverses(2) [OF assms(1)])
qed

lemma orbit_cong0:
  assumes  $x \in A \ f \in A \rightarrow A \ \bigwedge y. y \in A \implies f \ y = g \ y$  shows  $\text{orbit } f \ x = \text{orbit } g \ x$ 
proof –
  { fix  $n$  have  $(f \rightsquigarrow n) \ x = (g \rightsquigarrow n) \ x \wedge (f \rightsquigarrow n) \ x \in A$ 
    by (induct n rule: nat.induct) (insert assms, auto)
  } then show  $?thesis$  by (auto simp: orbit_altdef)
qed

lemma orbit_cong:
  assumes self_in: t ∈ orbit f t and eq:  $\bigwedge s. s \in \text{orbit } f \ t \implies g \ s = f \ s$ 
  shows  $\text{orbit } g \ t = \text{orbit } f \ t$ 
  using assms(1) _ assms(2) by (rule orbit_cong0) (auto simp: orbit.step eq)

```

```

lemma cyclic_cong:
  assumes  $\bigwedge s. s \in S \implies f s = g s$  shows  $\text{cyclic\_on } f S = \text{cyclic\_on } g S$ 
proof -
  have  $(\exists s \in S. \text{orbit } f s = \text{orbit } g s) \implies \text{cyclic\_on } f S = \text{cyclic\_on } g S$ 
    by (metis cyclic_on_alldef cyclic_on_def)
  then show ?thesis by (metis assms orbit_cong cyclic_on_def)
qed

lemma permutes_comp_preserves_cyclic1:
  assumes  $g \text{ permutes } B \text{ cyclic\_on } f C$ 
  assumes  $A \cap B = \{\}$   $C \subseteq A$ 
  shows  $\text{cyclic\_on } (f \circ g) C$ 
proof -
  have *:  $\bigwedge c. c \in C \implies f (g c) = f c$ 
    using assms by (subst permutes_not_in [of g]) auto
  with assms(2) show ?thesis by (simp cong: cyclic_cong)
qed

lemma permutes_comp_preserves_cyclic2:
  assumes  $f \text{ permutes } A \text{ cyclic\_on } g C$ 
  assumes  $A \cap B = \{\}$   $C \subseteq B$ 
  shows  $\text{cyclic\_on } (f \circ g) C$ 
proof -
  obtain c where  $c \in C \ C = \text{orbit } g c \ c \in \text{orbit } g c$ 
    using  $\langle \text{cyclic\_on } g C \rangle$  by (auto simp: cyclic_on_def)
  then have  $\bigwedge c. c \in C \implies f (g c) = g c$ 
    using assms c by (subst permutes_not_in [of f]) (auto intro: orbit.intros)
  with assms(2) show ?thesis by (simp cong: cyclic_cong)
qed

lemma permutes_orbit_subset:
  assumes  $f \text{ permutes } S \ x \in S$  shows  $\text{orbit } f x \subseteq S$ 
proof
  fix y assume  $y \in \text{orbit } f x$ 
  then show  $y \in S$  by induct (auto simp: permutes_in_image assms)
qed

lemma cyclic_on_orbit':
  assumes permutation f shows  $\text{cyclic\_on } f (\text{orbit } f x)$ 
  unfolding cyclic_on_alldef using orbit_nonempty[of f x]
  by (auto intro: assms orbit_swap orbit_trans permutation_self_in_orbit)

lemma cyclic_on_orbit:
  assumes  $f \text{ permutes } S \text{ finite } S$  shows  $\text{cyclic\_on } f (\text{orbit } f x)$ 
  using assms by (intro cyclic_on_orbit') (auto simp: permutation_permutes)

lemma orbit_cyclic_eq3:
  assumes  $\text{cyclic\_on } f S \ y \in S$  shows  $\text{orbit } f y = S$ 

```

```

using assms unfolding cyclic_on_alldef by simp

lemma orbit_eq_singleton_iff:  $\text{orbit } f \ x = \{x\} \longleftrightarrow f \ x = x$  (is  $?L \longleftrightarrow ?R$ )
proof
  assume A:  $?R$ 
  { fix y assume  $y \in \text{orbit } f \ x$  then have  $y = x$ 
    by induct (auto simp: A)
  } then show  $?L$  by (metis orbit_nonempty singletonI subsetI subset_singletonD)
next
  assume A:  $?L$ 
  then have  $\bigwedge y. y \in \text{orbit } f \ x \implies f \ x = y$ 
    by - (erule orbit.cases, simp_all)
  then show  $?R$  using A by blast
qed

lemma eq_on_cyclic_on_iff1:
  assumes cyclic_on  $f \ S \ x \in S$ 
  obtains  $f \ x \in S \ f \ x = x \longleftrightarrow \text{card } S = 1$ 
proof
  from assms show  $f \ x \in S$  by (auto simp: cyclic_on_def intro: orbit.intros)
  from assms have  $S = \text{orbit } f \ x$  by (auto simp: cyclic_on_alldef)
  then have  $f \ x = x \longleftrightarrow S = \{x\}$  by (metis orbit_eq_singleton_iff)
  then show  $f \ x = x \longleftrightarrow \text{card } S = 1$  using  $\langle x \in S \rangle$  by (auto simp: card_Suc_eq)
qed

lemma orbit_eqI:
   $y = f \ x \implies y \in \text{orbit } f \ x$ 
   $z = f \ y \implies y \in \text{orbit } f \ x \implies z \in \text{orbit } f \ x$ 
  by (metis orbit.base) (metis orbit.step)

```

## 8.2 Decomposition of arbitrary permutations

**definition** *perm\_restrict* ::  $('a \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set} \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'a)$  **where**  
*perm\_restrict*  $f \ S \ x \equiv \text{if } x \in S \text{ then } f \ x \text{ else } x$

```

lemma perm_restrict_comp:
  assumes  $A \cap B = \{\}$  cyclic_on  $f \ B$ 
  shows  $\text{perm\_restrict } f \ A \circ \text{perm\_restrict } f \ B = \text{perm\_restrict } f \ (A \cup B)$ 
proof -
  have  $\bigwedge x. x \in B \implies f \ x \in B$  using  $\langle \text{cyclic\_on } f \ B \rangle$  by (rule cyclic_on_inI)
  with assms show  $?thesis$  by (auto simp: perm_restrict_def fun_eq_iff)
qed

```

```

lemma perm_restrict_simps:
   $x \in S \implies \text{perm\_restrict } f \ S \ x = f \ x$ 
   $x \notin S \implies \text{perm\_restrict } f \ S \ x = x$ 
  by (auto simp: perm_restrict_def)

```

```

lemma perm_restrict_perm_restrict:

```

```

perm_restrict (perm_restrict f A) B = perm_restrict f (A ∩ B)
by (auto simp: perm_restrict_def)

lemma perm_restrict_union:
  assumes perm_restrict f A permutes A perm_restrict f B permutes B A ∩ B = {}
  shows perm_restrict f A o perm_restrict f B = perm_restrict f (A ∪ B)
  using assms by (auto simp: fun_eq_iff perm_restrict_def permutes_def) (metis Diff_iff Diff_triv)

lemma perm_restrict_id[simp]:
  assumes f permutes S shows perm_restrict f S = f
  using assms by (auto simp: permutes_def perm_restrict_def)

lemma cyclic_on_perm_restrict:
  cyclic_on (perm_restrict f S) S ⟷ cyclic_on f S
  by (simp add: perm_restrict_def cong: cyclic_cong)

lemma perm_restrict_diff_cyclic:
  assumes f permutes S cyclic_on f A
  shows perm_restrict f (S - A) permutes (S - A)
proof -
  { fix y
    have ∃ x. perm_restrict f (S - A) x = y
    proof cases
      assume A: y ∈ S - A
      with ⟨f permutes S⟩ obtain x where f x = y x ∈ S
      unfolding permutes_def by auto metis
      moreover
      with A have x ∉ A by (metis Diff_iff assms(2) cyclic_on_inI)
      ultimately
      have perm_restrict f (S - A) x = y by (simp add: perm_restrict_simps)
      then show ?thesis ..
    next
      assume y ∉ S - A
      then have perm_restrict f (S - A) y = y by (simp add: perm_restrict_simps)
      then show ?thesis ..
    qed
  } note X = this

  { fix x y assume perm_restrict f (S - A) x = perm_restrict f (S - A) y
    with assms have x = y
    by (auto simp: perm_restrict_def permutes_def split: if_splits intro: cyclic_on_f_in)
  } note Y = this

  show ?thesis by (auto simp: permutes_def perm_restrict_simps X intro: Y)
qed

lemma permutes_decompose:

```

```

assumes  $f$  permutes  $S$  finite  $S$ 
shows  $\exists C. (\forall c \in C. \text{cyclic\_on } f \ c) \wedge \bigcup C = S \wedge (\forall c1 \in C. \forall c2 \in C. c1 \neq$ 
 $c2 \longrightarrow c1 \cap c2 = \{\})$ 
using  $\text{assms}(2,1)$ 
proof ( $\text{induction arbitrary: } f \text{ rule: finite\_psubset\_induct}$ )
  case ( $\text{psubset } S$ )

  show  $?case$ 
  proof ( $\text{cases } S = \{\}$ )
    case  $\text{True}$  then show  $?thesis$  by ( $\text{intro exI}[\text{where } x=\{\}]) \text{ auto}$ 
  next
    case  $\text{False}$ 
    then obtain  $s$  where  $s \in S$  by  $\text{auto}$ 
    with  $\langle f \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  have  $\text{orbit } f \ s \subseteq S$ 
    by ( $\text{rule permutes\_orbit\_subset}$ )
    have  $\text{cyclic\_orbit: cyclic\_on } f \ (\text{orbit } f \ s)$ 
    using  $\langle f \text{ permutes } S \rangle \langle \text{finite } S \rangle$  by ( $\text{rule cyclic\_on\_orbit}$ )

    let  $?f' = \text{perm\_restrict } f \ (S - \text{orbit } f \ s)$ 

    have  $f \ s \in S$  using  $\langle f \text{ permutes } S \rangle \langle s \in S \rangle$  by ( $\text{auto simp: permutes\_in\_image}$ )
    then have  $S - \text{orbit } f \ s \subset S$  using  $\text{orbit.base}[\text{of } f \ s] \langle s \in S \rangle$  by  $\text{blast}$ 
    moreover
    have  $?f' \text{ permutes } (S - \text{orbit } f \ s)$ 
    using  $\langle f \text{ permutes } S \rangle \text{cyclic\_orbit}$  by ( $\text{rule perm\_restrict\_diff\_cyclic}$ )
    ultimately
    obtain  $C$  where  $C: \bigwedge c. c \in C \implies \text{cyclic\_on } ?f' \ c \bigcup C = S - \text{orbit } f \ s$ 
     $\forall c1 \in C. \forall c2 \in C. c1 \neq c2 \longrightarrow c1 \cap c2 = \{\}$ 
    using  $\text{psubset.IH}$  by  $\text{metis}$ 

    { fix  $c$  assume  $c \in C$ 
      then have  $*$ :  $\bigwedge x. x \in c \implies \text{perm\_restrict } f \ (S - \text{orbit } f \ s) \ x = f \ x$ 
      using  $C(2) \langle f \text{ permutes } S \rangle$  by ( $\text{auto simp add: perm\_restrict\_def}$ )
      then have  $\text{cyclic\_on } f \ c$  using  $C(1)[\text{OF } \langle c \in C \rangle]$  by ( $\text{simp cong: cyclic\_cong}$ 
 $\text{add: } *$ )
    } note  $\text{in\_C\_cyclic} = \text{this}$ 

    have  $\text{Un\_ins: } \bigcup (\text{insert } (\text{orbit } f \ s) \ C) = S$ 
    using  $\langle \bigcup C = \_ \rangle \langle \text{orbit } f \ s \subseteq S \rangle$  by  $\text{blast}$ 

    have  $\text{Disj\_ins: } (\forall c1 \in \text{insert } (\text{orbit } f \ s) \ C. \forall c2 \in \text{insert } (\text{orbit } f \ s) \ C. c1 \neq$ 
 $c2 \longrightarrow c1 \cap c2 = \{\})$ 
    using  $C$  by  $\text{auto}$ 

    show  $?thesis$ 
    by ( $\text{intro conjI Un\_ins Disj\_ins exI}[\text{where } x=\text{insert } (\text{orbit } f \ s) \ C])$ 
    ( $\text{auto simp: cyclic\_orbit in\_C\_cyclic}$ )
  qed
qed

```



### 8.3 Function-power distance between values

**definition** *funpow\_dist* ::  $('a \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow \text{nat}$  **where**  
*funpow\_dist* *f* *x* *y*  $\equiv \text{LEAST } n. (f \hat{\sim} n) x = y$

**abbreviation** *funpow\_dist1* ::  $('a \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow \text{nat}$  **where**  
*funpow\_dist1* *f* *x* *y*  $\equiv \text{Suc } (\text{funpow\_dist } f (f x) y)$

**lemma** *funpow\_dist\_0*:  
**assumes**  $x = y$  **shows** *funpow\_dist* *f* *x* *y* = 0  
**using** *assms* **unfolding** *funpow\_dist\_def* **by** (intro *Least\_eq\_0*) *simp*

**lemma** *funpow\_dist\_least*:  
**assumes**  $n < \text{funpow\_dist } f x y$  **shows**  $(f \hat{\sim} n) x \neq y$   
**proof** (rule *notI*)  
**assume**  $(f \hat{\sim} n) x = y$   
**then have** *funpow\_dist* *f* *x* *y*  $\leq n$  **unfolding** *funpow\_dist\_def* **by** (rule *Least\_le*)  
**with** *assms* **show** *False* **by** *linarith*  
**qed**

**lemma** *funpow\_dist1\_least*:  
**assumes**  $0 < n < \text{funpow\_dist1 } f x y$  **shows**  $(f \hat{\sim} n) x \neq y$   
**proof** (rule *notI*)  
**assume**  $(f \hat{\sim} n) x = y$   
**then have**  $(f \hat{\sim} (n - 1)) (f x) = y$   
**using**  $\langle 0 < n \rangle$  **by** (cases *n*) (*simp\_all* add: *funpow\_swap1*)  
**then have** *funpow\_dist* *f* (f *x*) *y*  $\leq n - 1$  **unfolding** *funpow\_dist\_def* **by** (rule *Least\_le*)  
**with** *assms* **show** *False* **by** *simp*  
**qed**

**lemma** *funpow\_dist\_prop*:  
 $y \in \text{orbit } f x \implies (f \hat{\sim} \text{funpow\_dist } f x y) x = y$   
**unfolding** *funpow\_dist\_def* **by** (rule *LeastI\_ex*) (*auto simp: orbit\_altdef*)

**lemma** *funpow\_dist\_0\_eq*:  
**assumes**  $y \in \text{orbit } f x$  **shows** *funpow\_dist* *f* *x* *y* = 0  $\longleftrightarrow x = y$   
**using** *assms* **by** (*auto simp: funpow\_dist\_0 dest: funpow\_dist\_prop*)

**lemma** *funpow\_dist\_step*:  
**assumes**  $x \neq y$   $y \in \text{orbit } f x$  **shows** *funpow\_dist* *f* *x* *y* = *Suc* (*funpow\_dist* *f* (f *x*) *y*)  
**proof** –  
**from**  $\langle y \in \_ \rangle$  **obtain** *n* **where**  $(f \hat{\sim} n) x = y$  **by** (*auto simp: orbit\_altdef*)  
**with**  $\langle x \neq y \rangle$  **obtain** *n'* **where** [*simp*]:  $n = \text{Suc } n'$  **by** (cases *n*) *auto*

**show** *?thesis*  
**unfolding** *funpow\_dist\_def*  
**proof** (rule *Least\_Suc2*)  
**show**  $(f \hat{\sim} n) x = y$  **by** *fact*

```

    then show  $(f \frown n') (f x) = y$  by (simp add: funpow_swap1)
  show  $(f \frown 0) x \neq y$  using  $\langle x \neq y \rangle$  by simp
  show  $\forall k. ((f \frown \text{Suc } k) x = y) = ((f \frown k) (f x) = y)$ 
    by (simp add: funpow_swap1)
qed
qed

lemma funpow_dist1_prop:
  assumes  $y \in \text{orbit } f x$  shows  $(f \frown \text{funpow\_dist1 } f x y) x = y$ 
  by (metis assms funpow_dist_prop funpow_dist_step funpow_simps_right(2)
    o_apply self_in_orbit_step)

lemma funpow_neq_less_funpow_dist:
  assumes  $y \in \text{orbit } f x$   $m \leq \text{funpow\_dist } f x y$   $n \leq \text{funpow\_dist } f x y$   $m \neq n$ 
  shows  $(f \frown m) x \neq (f \frown n) x$ 
proof (rule notI)
  assume A:  $(f \frown m) x = (f \frown n) x$ 

  define  $m' n'$  where  $m' = \min m n$  and  $n' = \max m n$ 
  with A assms have A':  $m' < n'$   $(f \frown m') x = (f \frown n') x$   $n' \leq \text{funpow\_dist } f x y$ 
  by (auto simp: min_def max_def)

  have  $y = (f \frown \text{funpow\_dist } f x y) x$ 
  using  $\langle y \in \_ \rangle$  by (simp only: funpow_dist_prop)
  also have  $\dots = (f \frown ((\text{funpow\_dist } f x y - n') + n')) x$ 
  using  $\langle n' \leq \_ \rangle$  by simp
  also have  $\dots = (f \frown ((\text{funpow\_dist } f x y - n') + m')) x$ 
  by (simp add: funpow_add  $\langle (f \frown m') x = \_ \rangle$ )
  also have  $(f \frown ((\text{funpow\_dist } f x y - n') + m')) x \neq y$ 
  using A' by (intro funpow_dist_least) linarith
  finally show False by simp
qed

lemma funpow_neq_less_funpow_dist1:
  assumes  $y \in \text{orbit } f x$   $m < \text{funpow\_dist1 } f x y$   $n < \text{funpow\_dist1 } f x y$   $m \neq n$ 
  shows  $(f \frown m) x \neq (f \frown n) x$ 
proof (rule notI)
  assume A:  $(f \frown m) x = (f \frown n) x$ 

  define  $m' n'$  where  $m' = \min m n$  and  $n' = \max m n$ 
  with A assms have A':  $m' < n'$   $(f \frown m') x = (f \frown n') x$   $n' < \text{funpow\_dist1 } f x y$ 
  by (auto simp: min_def max_def)

  have  $y = (f \frown \text{funpow\_dist1 } f x y) x$ 
  using  $\langle y \in \_ \rangle$  by (simp only: funpow_dist1_prop)

```

**also have**  $\dots = (f \smallfrown ((\text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y - n') + n')) \ x$   
**using**  $\langle n' < \_ \rangle$  **by** *simp*  
**also have**  $\dots = (f \smallfrown ((\text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y - n') + m')) \ x$   
**by** (*simp add: funpow\_add*  $\langle f \smallfrown m' \rangle \ x = \_ \rangle$ )  
**also have**  $(f \smallfrown ((\text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y - n') + m')) \ x \neq y$   
**using**  $A'$  **by** (*intro funpow\_dist1\_least linarith+*)  
**finally show** *False* **by** *simp*  
**qed**

**lemma** *inj\_on\_funpow\_dist*:  
**assumes**  $y \in \text{orbit } f \ x$  **shows** *inj\_on*  $(\lambda n. (f \smallfrown n) \ x) \ \{0.. \text{funpow\_dist } f \ x \ y\}$   
**using** *funpow\_neq\_less\_funpow\_dist* [*OF assms*] **by** (*intro inj\_onI auto*)

**lemma** *inj\_on\_funpow\_dist1*:  
**assumes**  $y \in \text{orbit } f \ x$  **shows** *inj\_on*  $(\lambda n. (f \smallfrown n) \ x) \ \{0.. \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y\}$   
**using** *funpow\_neq\_less\_funpow\_dist1* [*OF assms*] **by** (*intro inj\_onI auto*)

**lemma** *orbit\_conv\_funpow\_dist1*:  
**assumes**  $x \in \text{orbit } f \ x$   
**shows**  $\text{orbit } f \ x = (\lambda n. (f \smallfrown n) \ x) \ \{0.. \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ x\}$  (**is**  $?L = ?R$ )  
**using** *funpow\_dist1\_prop* [*OF assms*]  
**by** (*auto simp: orbit\_altdef\_bounded* [**where**  $n = \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ x$ ])

**lemma** *funpow\_dist1\_prop1*:  
**assumes**  $(f \smallfrown n) \ x = y$   $0 < n$  **shows**  $(f \smallfrown \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y) \ x = y$   
**proof** –  
**from** *assms* **have**  $y \in \text{orbit } f \ x$  **by** (*auto simp: orbit\_altdef*)  
**then show**  $?thesis$  **by** (*rule funpow\_dist1\_prop*)  
**qed**

**lemma** *funpow\_dist1\_dist*:  
**assumes**  $\text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y < \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ z$   
**assumes**  $\{y, z\} \subseteq \text{orbit } f \ x$   
**shows**  $\text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ z = \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y + \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ y \ z$  (**is**  $?L = ?R$ )  
**proof** –  
**define**  $n$  **where**  $\langle n = \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ z - \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y - 1 \rangle$   
**with** *assms* **have**  $*$ :  $\langle \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ z = \text{Suc } (\text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y + n) \rangle$   
**by** *simp*  
**have**  $x\_z$ :  $(f \smallfrown \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ z) \ x = z$  **using** *assms* **by** (*blast intro: funpow\_dist1\_prop*)  
**have**  $x\_y$ :  $(f \smallfrown \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y) \ x = y$  **using** *assms* **by** (*blast intro: funpow\_dist1\_prop*)  
  
**have**  $(f \smallfrown (\text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ z - \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y)) \ y$   
 $= (f \smallfrown (\text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ z - \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y)) \ ((f \smallfrown \text{funpow\_dist1 } f \ x \ y) \ x)$   
**using**  $x\_y$  **by** *simp*  
**also have**  $\dots = z$

```

    using assms x_z by (simp add: * funpow_add ac_simps funpow_swap1)
  finally have y_z_diff: (f  $\sim$  (funpow_dist1 f x z - funpow_dist1 f x y)) y = z .
  then have (f  $\sim$  funpow_dist1 f y z) y = z
    using assms by (intro funpow_dist1_prop1) auto
  then have (f  $\sim$  funpow_dist1 f y z) ((f  $\sim$  funpow_dist1 f x y) x) = z
    using x_y by simp
  then have (f  $\sim$  (funpow_dist1 f y z + funpow_dist1 f x y)) x = z
    by (simp add: * funpow_add funpow_swap1)
  show ?thesis
proof (rule antisym)
  from y_z_diff have (f  $\sim$  funpow_dist1 f y z) y = z
    using assms by (intro funpow_dist1_prop1) auto
  then have (f  $\sim$  funpow_dist1 f y z) ((f  $\sim$  funpow_dist1 f x y) x) = z
    using x_y by simp
  then have (f  $\sim$  (funpow_dist1 f y z + funpow_dist1 f x y)) x = z
    by (simp add: * funpow_add funpow_swap1)
  then have funpow_dist1 f x z  $\leq$  funpow_dist1 f y z + funpow_dist1 f x y
    using funpow_dist1_least not_less by fastforce
  then show ?L  $\leq$  ?R by presburger
next
  have funpow_dist1 f y z  $\leq$  funpow_dist1 f x z - funpow_dist1 f x y
    using y_z_diff assms(1) by (metis not_less zero_less_diff funpow_dist1_least)
  then show ?R  $\leq$  ?L by linarith
qed
qed

lemma funpow_dist1_le_self:
  assumes (f  $\sim$  m) x = x 0 < m y  $\in$  orbit f x
  shows funpow_dist1 f x y  $\leq$  m
proof (cases x = y)
  case True with assms show ?thesis by (auto dest!: funpow_dist1_least)
next
  case False
  have (f  $\sim$  funpow_dist1 f x y) x = (f  $\sim$  (funpow_dist1 f x y mod m)) x
    using assms by (simp add: funpow_mod_eq)
  with False  $\langle y \in \text{orbit } f x \rangle$  have funpow_dist1 f x y  $\leq$  funpow_dist1 f x y mod m
    by auto (metis  $\langle (f \sim \text{funpow\_dist1 } f x y) x = (f \sim (\text{funpow\_dist1 } f x y \text{ mod } m)) x \rangle$ 
    funpow_dist1_prop funpow_dist_least funpow_dist_step leI)
  with  $\langle m > 0 \rangle$  show ?thesis
    by (auto intro: order_trans)
qed

end

```

## 9 Basic combinatorics in Isabelle/HOL (and the Archive of Formal Proofs)

theory *Combinatorics*

```
imports  
  Transposition  
  Stirling  
  Permutations  
  List_Permutation  
  Multiset_Permutations  
  Cycles  
  Perm  
  Orbits  
begin  
  
end
```